

Victoria, McPherson Library, MS Eng.1  
Acc. 1977-005  
John Lydgate's *Fall of Princes* (imperfect)  
England s. XIV<sup>ex</sup>

---

This document contains transcription of **fols. 1r-21vb43** (Book I.120-5551: Prologue, Adam and Eve, Nimrod and Noah's Flood, Cadmus and Other Kings, Jove, Aeëtes, Minos, Sisera, Jocasta and Oedipus, Thyestes, Exhortation to Princes on Morals, Althea and Hercules), **fols. 26rb-27vb12** (Books I.6833-II.161: Canace and Macareus, Book II Prologue), **fols. 34rb58-36ra37** (Book II.1899-2338: Dido, Sardanapalus), and **fols. 122ra64-122vb69** (Book IX.2511-2727: Dante's Appearance to Boccaccio, Duke Gaultier).

**Credits:**

Transcription and textual notes were completed by University of Victoria undergraduate and graduate students as part of coursework for manuscript studies classes with Dr. Adrienne Williams Boyarin, as follows:

- Merida Zeindler, Book I.120-424 (1ra-2ra), December 2015
- Hayden Hayer, Book I.470-866 (2rb-3rb), December 2015
- Justin Head, Book I.867-1001 (4ra-4va), December 2015
- Ashley Augustus, Book I.1002-3122 (4va-12rb), plus additional editing and textual notes for Book I.120-1001, April 2015 and April 2016
- Mahsa Ebadpour, Book I.3158-3843 (12rb-14vb), December 2016
- Quinton Yates, Book I.3844-4242 (14vb-16rb), December 2016
- Duncan Calveley, Book I.4558-5037 (17va-19rb), December 2016
- Jordan Wille, Book I.5038-5551 (19rb-21vb), December 2016
- Lorna McVey, Book I.6833-Book II.161 (26rb-27vb), December 2016
- Catriona Duncan, Book II.1899-2338 (34rb-36ra), April 2016
- Megan Kazakoff, Book IX.2511-2727 (122ra-vb, end of manuscript), December 2016

Transcription conventions follow those set out by Kathryn Kerby-Fulton, "How to Transcribe Middle English," in *Opening Up Middle English Manuscripts: Literary and Visual Approaches*, edited by Kathryn Kerby-Fulton, Maidie Hilmo, and Linda Olson (Ithaca, 2012), pp. 2-5 and xxxi-xxxii (including the "Note on Transcriptions and Transcription Symbols"). Work has been checked throughout by Dr. Adrienne Williams Boyarin.

Line numbers and text lost through damage are supplied from Henry Bergen, ed., *Lydgate's Fall of Princes*, 4 vols., Early English Text Society e.s. 121-24 (London, 1924-27).

Textual notes follow the transcription and are keyed to Bergen's line numbers. Differences between this manuscript's text and that of Bergen are compiled there, privileging differences that affect the sense of the text, explain scribal errors, or may allow collation with other manuscripts; orthographical difference, common synonyms, and slight alterations in word order are not noted. Manuscript features—such as marginalia, annotations, and deletion methods—are also catalogued in the textual notes.

---

[1r, col. a – beginning of MS, two columns missing]

¶ Emonge theis Bochas writeth of swetnes  
And of matiers þat lusty been and gladde  
And som while he writeth of wrecchidnes  
And hough fortune can flour and aftyr fade  
[I]oy undre cloude prosperite in the shade  
[E]nterchaungyng of euery maner thyng  
[W]hich men fele her in this worlde lyuyng  
¶ [A]n in his processe who so liste beholde  
Of all estates of high and low degre  
[A]nd of princes both yong and olde  
[ffr]o the begynnyng which in þis worlde haue ben  
[L]yvyng in ioy or in aduersite  
ffro the firste he descendeth doune  
[O]f þeir fort[un]e by playn descripcion  
¶ [O]f the m[ost] noble he ne spareth noon  
[B]ut sett[eth] them in ordre seriuslie  
[G]ynneth at Adam and endeth at kyng Iohn  
[The]ir auentures rehersyng bie and bie  
[O]f this kyng Iohn concludyng finallie  
[Hou]gh þat he was for all grette puissance  
Of prince Edwarde tak prisoner in ffraunce  
¶ This said Bochas auctor of this booke  
Which of stories hadde grete intelligence  
Som he left and some also he toke  
Such as he left was of no negligence  
Supposing and demyng of credence  
All the stories which þat comyn be  
Other knewe them also well as he  
¶ And lest þat folk wolde haue hadde disdeigne  
Thynges comyn to put in memorie  
Therfor Bochas thought it was but veyne  
To his name non increce of glorie  
To remembre no cronicle nor storie  
But þeis þat ben for þeir merite notable  
Auctorized famose and commendable  
¶ In his labour hauyng a delite  
That the maitier gretelie myght availe  
Do plesaunce to the comyn profite  
Of notable stories to make rehersall  
Shewyng a myrour hough all þe world shall fayle  
And hough fortune for all þeier high renoune  
Hath vpon princes Iurisdiccoun  
¶ The which thyng in ful sobre wyse  
He considred in his inwarde intente  
In his reson began to aduertise

Book I.120

130

140

150

160

Seyng of princes þe blynd intendement  
 With wordlie worshipes hough þei be blent  
 As þei shuld euer þeire estatez kepe  
 And as fortune wer layde on slepe  
 ¶As thei hadde of fortune the maistrie  
 Hyr enchauntid with þeir pacience 170  
 By sum crafte of new sorcerie  
 Or by power [o]f incantancioun  
 To make stable þeir dominacioun  
 With Iren cheynes for to laste longe  
 Lokked to Rokkes of adamaunt stones  
 ¶Supposyng in their surquedie  
 Their estatez shulde be durable  
 But fortune began frowardlie denie  
 Pleinelie preve þat þei be chaungeable  
 And to princes for thei be not stable 180

**[1r, col. b]**

ffortune full oft for all their grete estate  
 Vnwarlie chaungeth and seith to them chekmate  
 ¶ffor lordes sume in their magnificence  
 Of Roiall power set of godde right nowght  
 They wyl not considre his longe pacience  
 No[r] aduertiseth his power in their thought  
 Bu[t] in their hertes if it were well sought  
 Hough he is meke and pacient to abide  
 They wolde of reson þeire pompe ley on syde  
 ¶But for their taryng and þeir negligence 190  
 That þei to [hym] wyll not resort agayn  
 Yit of his m[erci]e and his beneuolence  
 Without veng[eau]nce rigour or disdeigne  
 As a meke fadre in all his werkes pleine  
 Assaieth his yerde of castigacioun  
 So for to bringe them to correcioun  
 ¶Som he can ful fadrelie chastise  
 Where he loveth by punysshynge of seknes  
 And of his mercy many a ~~sonne~~ <sup>another</sup> wyse  
 Bathuertise of som wordlie distresse 200  
 And he not asketh for his kyndnes  
 ^of^ High ne lowe · who so can aduerte  
 Noon othyr tresour · but oonly a mannes hert  
 ¶And as myn auctour liste to comprehende  
 This John Bochas by grete auctorite  
 It is almes to correcte and amende  
 The vicius folke of euery comenalte  
 And by examples which þat notable be

Of princes holde þat whilom did fall  
 The lowere peple from ~~them~~ ^theire^ errour calle 210  
 ¶ By smale whelpes · as som clerkys write  
 Chastysed is the myghty force lio[un]  
 And whan the sworde of vengeaunce eke doth bite  
 Vpon *princes* for their transgressioun  
 The comyn peple in their opinion  
 ffor verray drede tremble doon *and* quake  
 And by suche meanes þeir vices doon forsake  
 ¶ And such also · as haue ben defoilede  
 In their vices by longe continuance  
 Or in their synnes rustid and emoulyde 220  
 By good example may com to temperance  
 Who hym repenteth the lorde wil hym avaunce  
 And hym accepte in high *and* lowe estate  
 The meke preferre · punyssh the obstinate  
 ¶ This said matier touchyng such thynges  
 Myn auctour Bochas here aftyr shal declare  
 By example of *princes* and of myghty kynges  
 What was þeir fine · and not the truthe spare  
 And thof my stile naked be and bare  
 In rethorik myn auctour for [to] sewe 230  
 Yit for the truthe shal I not remewe  
 ¶ But on the substance by goode leysir [abide]  
 Aftyr myn auctour lyk as I may attein[e]  
 And for my parte set eloquence [aside]  
 And on his booke bewepen and [compleyne]  
 Thassaut of fortune frowarde and [sodeyne]  
 Hough she in *princes* hath kid h[ir] variaunce]  
 And of hir malice þe dedelie mortall ch[aunce]  
 ¶ But · o · alas · Who shal be muse

[1v, col. a]

Or vnto whom shal I for helpe calle 240  
 Calliope my callyng wyl refuse  
 And on Pernaso hyr worthi sustren all  
 Thei wyl their sugre tempre with no gall  
 ffor then swetnes *and* lusty fressh syngyng  
 fful ferre discordeth fro matiers compleynyng  
 ¶ My maistre Chaucer with his fresh comedies  
 Is dede alas chefe poete of Britaine  
 That whilom made ful pietus tragedies  
 The fall of *princes* he did also compleine  
 As he þat was of makyng souereigne 250  
 Whom all this londe shuld of right preferre  
 Sith of oure language he was þe lode sterre

¶ Senec in Rome · thirgh his high prudence  
Wrote tragedies of grete moralite  
And Tullius of Retorik þe chefe welle  
Made in his tyme many a fressh dite  
ffrancis petrark of fflorence þe cite  
Made a boke as I can reherce  
Of · two fortunes wylfull and *peruerse* ·

¶ Agayn both wrote ij · remedies  
In bokes tweine made a diuisioun  
Among rehersyng many fressh stories  
The fyrste boke is thus conueyed downe  
A dialoge · betwene gladnes *and* resoun  
The secund can bere me wele witnes  
Made between reson *and* worldlie hevines ·

¶ The matier is right wondre delectable  
Though wo with ioye haue an Interesse  
And John Bochas wrote matiers commendable  
The fall of princes where he doth expresse  
Hough from þeire Ioye they fell in grete distres  
And all other writers thirgh *þer* famus renoune  
Grete worship did vnto this nacioun

¶ And sembleable as I haue tolde toforne  
My maistre Chaucere did his besynes  
And in his dayes hath so well hym borne  
Oute of oure tonge to avoide all rudnes  
And to reforme it with colours of swetnes  
Wherefor let vs yeve hym laude *and* glorie  
And put his name with poetes in memorie

¶ Of whos labour to make mencion  
Wherethurgh he shuld of right commendid be  
In youth he made a translacioun  
Of a booke which called is Trophe  
In lumbarde tonge as men may rede *and* se  
And in oure vulgare longe or *þat* he diede  
Gafe it the name of Troilus and Cresseide

¶ Which for to rede lovers them delite  
Thei have *þerin* so grete deuocion  
And this poet also hym self to quite  
Of Boeces booke the consolacion  
Made in his tyme an hole translacion  
[A]nd to his sonne *þat* called was lowys  
[He] made a tretis full noble *and* of grete price

¶ [V]pon this booke in ful notable forme  
[S]et them in ordre with their diuisions  
[M]en wittes to applie and conforme  
[To un]drestand by expert reso[ns]

260

270

280

290

[Be do]myfyyng of sundrie mansiones  
 [Th]e rote oute sought at þe ascendent 300  
 [To]forne or he gave eny iugement  
 ¶[He] wrote also many days agon

**[1v, col. b]**

In englissh hym self so doth expresse  
 The pietus story of Ceyx and Alcion  
 And the deth eke of Blonche the duchesse  
 And notable did hys bysynes  
 By grete avice his wittes to dispose  
 To translate þe romanes of the rose  
 ¶Thus in vertu he set all his intent  
 Idlenes and vices for to fle 310

Of foules also he wrote the parlement  
 Therin remembryng of royall egles thre  
 Hough in their chase þei felt aduersite  
 To for nature proferd þe bataile  
 Eche for his partie yef it [w]olde availe  
 ¶He did also his diligence and p[eyne]  
 In oure vulgare to translate an[d] endite  
 Origene vpon the magdalene  
 And of the lion a booke he did write  
 Of Armelida & and of fals Arcite 320

He made a compleint dolefull and piet[us]  
 And of the broche which þat Vulcanous  
 ¶At Thebes wrought full diuerse of nature  
 Ovide writeth who þerof hadde a sight  
 ffor high desire he shuld not indure  
 But he it hadde neuer be gladde ne light  
 And yf he hadde it onys in his myght  
 Lyke as my maistire saith *and* writeth in dede  
 It to conserue · he shulde ay lyve in drede

¶This poet wrote at request of the quene 330  
 Of goode women to fynde oute nyntene 332  
 That did excelle in beaute and feyrnes  
 But for his labour and bysynes

Was importable his wittes to encombre  
 In all this worlde to fynd oute so grete a noumbre  
 A legend of parfite holynes 331

¶He made a booke of Cantrebury tales 337

When the pilgrimes rode on pilgrimage  
 Thurghoute kent by hylles and by vales  
 And all the stories tolde in their passage 340  
 Endited them full well in oure language  
 Summe of knyghthode summe of gentillez

And summe of love and summe of *parfitnes*  
 ¶ And summe also of grete moralite  
 Summe of disporte includyng grete centence  
 In prose he wrote þe tale of Melibe  
 And of his wyf þat called was Prudence  
 And of Grysilides of *parfite* pacience  
 And hough þe monk of stories newe and olde  
 Pitevous tragedies by the way tolde 350  
 ¶ This saide poet my maistre in his dayes  
 Made and compiled ful many a fresh dite  
 Compleintez ballades Roundell *and* virrelayes  
 fful delectable to here and to se  
 ffor which men shuld of right and equite  
 Sey he of english in makyng was þe beste  
 Pray we vnto godde to yeve his soule gode reste  
 ¶ And theis poetes I make of mencion  
 That were be olde tyme hadde grete ~~deyn~~ deynte  
 With kynges princes in euery region 360  
 Gretely *preferrede* aftyr their degre

**[2r, col. a]**

ffor lordes hadde plesaunce for to se  
 To studie emonge and to caste their lokes  
 At goode leyser vpon wyse bookes  
 ¶ ffor in the tyme of Cesar Iulius  
 [W]han he the triumphe wann in Rome town  
 [H]e entre wolde þe Scol of Tullius  
 [A]nd here his lecture of grete affeccioun  
 [A]nd notwithstanding his conquest *and* renoune  
 [Vn]to bookes he gave grete attendaunce 370  
 [An]d had in ~~seer~~ stories ioy *and* grete plesaunce  
 ¶ [Ek]e in this lande I dare afferme a thyng  
 [Ther] is a prince ful myghty of puisaunce  
 [A] kynges son and vncler vnto the kyng  
 [Hen]ri the Sexte which is now in ffraunce  
 [An]d is lewetenant *and* hath the gouernaunce  
 [Of] oure Breteine thurgh whos discrecioun  
 [He h]ath *conserued* in this Region  
 ¶ [Dury]ng his tyme of full high prudence  
 [Pes] and quiete · and susteineth right 380  
 [Yit] not withstandyng his noble *prouidence*  
 He is in deede preved a goode knyght  
 Iede as Argus with reson and foresight  
 Of high lecture I dare of hym eke telle  
 And trulie deme þat he doth excelle  
 ¶ In vndrestondyng all oþer of his age

And hath grete ioye with clerkes to comyn  
 And no man is more experte of language  
 Stable in studie all way he doth continue  
 Settyng on syde all chaunges of fortune 390  
 And where he loveth yf I shal not tarie  
 Without cause ful loth he is to varie  
 ¶ Duk of Gloucestre men this ~~duke~~ ^prince^ calle  
 And not withstandyng his state his dignite  
 His corage neuer doth appalle  
 To studie in bookes of antiquite  
 Therin he hath so grete felicite  
 Vertueslie hym to occupie  
 Of vicius slouth he hath the maistrie  
 ¶ And with his prudence and his manhode 400  
 Trough to susteine · he favour set asyde  
 And holy chyrch maintainyng in dede  
 þat in this lande no lollarde dare abide  
 As verrey support vpholdar *and* eke gyde  
 Spareth non but make hym self stronge  
 To punish all þoo þat doon þe chyrch wronge  
 ¶ Thus is he ^both^ manlie *and* eke wyse  
 Chosen of godde to be his own knyght  
 And of oon thyng he hath a singler price  
 That heretik noon dare comm in his sigh 410  
 In cristes feith he stand so hoole vpryght  
 Of holy chyrch defence and Champion  
 To chastise ^all^ þoo · þat do þerto treson  
 ¶ And to do ples[a]unce to oure lorde Ihesu  
 He studieth euer to haue intelligence  
 Redyng of bookes bryngeth in vertu  
 Vices excludyng slouth and negligence  
 Maketh a prince to haue experience  
 To know hym self in many sondre wyse  
 Wher he trespasseth · his *errour* to chastise 420  
 ¶ And emonge bookes pleinlie þus þe case  
 This sayde *prince* considred of reson  
 The noble boke of this Iohn Bochas  
 Was acordyng in his opinion

**[2r, col. b]**

Of grete nobles and reputacion  
 And to princes greteli necessarie  
 To yeve example hough þis world doth varie  
 ¶ And for this cause in his intende  
 To shew the vntruste of all worldlie þinges  
 He gave me in *commandment* 430



As ð hym semyd it was right wel sittynge  
That I shuld after my cunning  
This booke *translate* · hym to do plesaunce  
To shewe the chaunge of worldlie variance  
¶ And with the supporte of his magnificence  
Vndre the wynges of his correccioun  
Thof þat I haue lake of high eloquence  
I shal procede in this translacion  
ffro me avoidyng all presumpcion  
Louly submyttyng euery oure and space 440  
My rude language to my lordes grace

¶ And as I haue oon þing well in mynde  
He bad I shulde in especiall  
ffollow myn auctour writen as I fynde  
And for no fauour be nothyng partiall  
Thus I mene to speke in generall  
And noon estate singlerlie depraue  
But þe sentence of myn auctor saue  
¶ All this conceived I gan my stile dresse 450  
Thof I wolde in my matier procede  
And for the matier obreyed on hevynes  
Off fresh colours I toke no maner heede  
But my processe pleinlie for to leede  
As me semyd it was to me moste neede  
To set apart of rethorikes swete ·

¶ Dites of mornyng and of compleynyng  
Not apparteine vnto Calliope  
Nor to the Muses þat on Parnaso syng  
Which be remembred in noumbre thrys thre ·  
And vnto matiers of aduersite 460  
With their sugred aureate liquour  
They be not wyllly for to do fauour

¶ But of disdeigne me settyng ferre abak  
To hyndre me of þat I wolde endite  
Havyng no coloures but onlie whit *and* blak  
To the tragedies which I shal write  
And for I can my selfe no bettyr aquite  
Vndre supporte of all þat shall it rede  
Vpon Bochas right þus I wyll procede  
**Explicit prologus · Et incipit prima Tragedia  
de Casu Adam Prothoparentis**

Whan Iohn Bochas considred had *and* sought 470  
The woful fall of myghty conquerors  
A remembrance entred in his thought  
Reknyng the noumbre of oure predecessoures  
And fyrste to mynd com the progenitoure

Of all mankynd ferre Ironne in age  
 And towarde hym holdyng þeir passage  
 ¶As hym thought in his inward sight  
 In their coming full pitevouslie tremb[lyng]  
 Quakyng for age and lak of myght  
 There grete febles by signes *and* shewyn[g]  
 And oon of them first at þere commyn[g]  
 Our fadre Adam sodenlie abrayed  
 And to myn auctor ~~Eue~~ euen thus [he sayed]  
 ¶Cosyn Bochas I wyl well þat þu lere  
 þu þat arte bysy to serche onto ouer a[l]

480

[2v, col. a]

Of infortune the maner to inquire  
 Hyr soden chaunge turnyng as a ball  
 Of erthlie princes from the estate royall  
 It is moste fittyng or we asondre twynn  
 At vs tweine þi processe þer begynne  
 ¶Considre fyrst þe lorde in his advice  
 When he vs made vnto his lyknes  
 He put vs both into paradise  
 Ther to haue lyuen in *parfite* stablenes  
 Tyl the *serpent* did hys bysynes  
 Of fals envie to make vs lese oure grace  
 Perpetuelly to exile vs from þat place  
 ¶And when Iohn Bochas naked them beheld  
 Withoute þe hande ~~na~~ maked of nature  
 Of slyme of the erth in damascene þe felde  
 Godde made them feyrest aboue iche creature  
 And for thei shuld *perpetuallie* indure  
 By discrecion for a prerogitiue  
 He induede them with a soule of lyfe  
 ¶Perfite of age as men of xxx<sup>ti</sup> yere  
 Put them aftyr in possession  
 Of paradise a place moste entiere  
 And of delicez a chosen mansion  
 Wher Adam made an imposicion  
 To ffyssh and foule and to bestes all  
 Of verrey reson · what men shuld them call  
 ¶Oute of a ribbe while þat Adam slepe  
 Eue was drawe ful fayre of hyr visage  
 All sodenlie or þat he toke kepe  
 Aftyr to hym ioyned in mariage  
 ffor his disporte and for his avauntage  
 So as the lorde fyrste vyues did ordeiyne  
 Outhir for helpe or for increce of peine

490

500

510

¶ Godde onto them yaue the souereynete  
 Of paradise and dominacion 520  
 A place fulfilled of all felicitye  
 The frutez all in there subieccion  
 Saue þat of oon was made excepcion  
 Which godd badde þe Bible can deuise  
 þat thei shuld touche it in no wyse  
 ¶ All delicez of þat heuenlie place  
 God gaue to them and put in their kepyng  
 To vse them in eny oure and space  
 To þeire moste ese as was to þem lykyng  
 ^[Bloomys] blossomes þer fayrnes ay kepyng^ 530  
 And the frute all way of oon freshnes  
 ffor wyntre stormes might do them no duresse  
 ¶ The soile enbrowded ful of somyr floures  
 Ther wedes wekked hadde noon interesse  
 ffor godd and kynde with freshnes of coloures  
 And with their tapitez and motleis of gladnes  
 Had made þat place habounde in all swetnes  
 And fresh flora · which us of floures quene  
 Hyr liste made of a perpetuel grene  
 ¶ The trees raughten almoste to the heuyn 540  
 Which caste aboute a ful plesaunt shade  
 þat storme ne reyne thondre wynde ne levyn  
 No powere hadde þeir leues for to fade  
 ffor euer þei were eliche fressh and glade  
 [A]nd when þei þer þei might see  
 Mydde of þere gardenie of lyfe þe holsom tre  
 [¶] Which vertu hadde agayn all maladie  
 ffolke to preserue of youth in þeir freshnes  
 [W]ho ete þerof shulde neuer die  
 [But] euer lyve in ioy and gladnes 550  
 [An]d nethir feeble trouble ne seknes  
 [But] in þat place haue all weye hertes ese  
 [And su]ffisaunce of all þat might þem plese ·

**[2v, col. b]**

¶ Euer endure and neuer falle in age  
 ffor which it was called the tre of lyf  
 But when Adam was fallen in dotage  
 And ageyn godde gan holden stryfe  
 Thurgh þe excityng of hyr þat was his wyfe  
 And wyfully gaue to hyr assent  
 To breke þe precepte and commaundment 560  
 ¶ Of godde the lorde thurgh wyfull negligence  
 To approche the tre þat bare no name 562

ffor of the frute who did atame 564  
 He sothelie shulde the bible seith þe same  
 Of goode and evyll haue cunnyng in hi[s thought]  
 The tre of cunnyng *and* also of science 563  
 Wher as befor of evyl [he] knew right no[wght] 567  
 ¶ Thus hadde thei fyrste of euyl *experien*[e]  
 Where as befor þei knewe no wykkydne[s]  
 Presumpcion and Inobedience 570  
 Brought them from ioy in to wrechedn[es]  
 ffor afor tyme myn auctour bereth w[itnes]  
 Helthe and goodnes were called verre[y lyf]  
 Euel named seknes fyrst rote of all oure [stryf]  
 ¶ In paradise myn auctour seith certeine  
 The ryuers were so orient and fyne  
 Lyk quyksyluer vpboylyng on the pleyne  
 And in their rennyng verrey cristalline  
 Which from a well heuenlie and diuine  
 In their vpspryngyng *and* þeire avalyng down 580  
 Of all plesaunce gaue so swete a sown  
 ¶ That it wold rauissh a corage  
 Whos bawmy liquour endewede all þe place  
 And with the freshnes and cours of his passage  
 The holsum e aer hertes did embrace  
 Ther was such plente of plesaunce *and* of *grace*  
 That *every* spice herbe greine and rote  
 Were founde growyng in þat gardenn soote  
 ¶ Ther was also a delectable sown  
 Of songe of byrdes in their armonie 590  
 The aer was clene frome all corrupcioun  
 ffor þerin engendred was no maladie  
 Ther was all myrth þer was all melodie  
 Of ioye and blys soueraigne suffisaunce  
 With all þat may to hertes do plesaunce  
 ¶ And of clerkys lyk as it is tolde  
 In their bookes lyke as thei determ[i]ne  
 Hough in his spere the sunne manyfolde  
 Was of more vertu *and* more clere did shyne  
 Then it doth now in his mydday lyne 600  
 The mone whitter with hyr bemys clere  
 And euery sterre bryghter did appere  
 ¶ Euery thyng was þer more vertuus  
 þan þei be now who can beholde and se  
 ffor in þat place þer was no thyng noyus  
 But parfite gladnes knytte vnto surte  
 Perpetuel pes ioy and prosperite  
 And in þat blys to maken more stronge

To þeire comfort godde spake with þem among  
 ¶ Of his goodnes he bare þem companie 610  
 Shewyng vnto them his *gracius* presence  
 Aungels also þeir state to magnifie  
 Amonge to *serue* them did þeir diligence  
 In diuerse officz with humble reuerence  
 And nature wrought for þe nones  
 Of ryall purple and of ~~Ryall~~ rych stones ·  
 ¶ Tyssues ^of^ golde · and ~~oper~~ othyr ^ornamentes^ ~~dinat~~ ordinaunce

[3r, col. a]

ffor tenviron þere bodilie beaute  
 [S]hapyng to þem such *manner* of garnementes  
 As anngels vse in their felicity 620  
 [N]akede thei were fayrest on to se  
 [f]for while thei stode in state of Innocence  
 [Th]ey hadde of clothyng noon experience  
 ¶ [An]d of their blys to mak mencion  
 [And] of their ioies þat were celestiall  
 [Ther] may be made no comparison  
 [Of] noo ioy which is temporall  
 [Whic]h shoulde haue bien lastyng *and* imortall  
 [Euer t]o haue lyved in myrth and gladnes  
 [Sauff] agayn reson of verrey wylfulnes 630  
 ¶ [Thei] banshid them self out of þat blysful lyfe  
 [Whan] Adam gave credence to a snake  
 [And w]recched[li]e gan truste to his wyfe  
 [Which g]an an appil of the serpent take  
 [And pl]esauntlie did a present make  
 [Onto] Adam as she þat fyrste began  
 [Deth t]o devise a poyson un to man  
 ¶ [Bu]t as þere ioye was incomparable  
 [Gre]ttest þeire lordeship above al erthly þing  
 So þeire fall was to them importable 640  
 ffor he þat was ^ouer^ ~~ouer~~ all ~~oper~~ suremountyng  
 In paradise reigntyng as a kyng  
 Was it not a dedelie mortall peine  
 ffro þat place to haue a fall sodeine  
 ¶ ffor þat sorowe surmountith all sorowe  
 Which nexte foloweth aftyr felicity ·  
 No wo more grevous at euen ne at morowe  
 As is in dede soden aduersite  
 Which comyth vnwarlie aftyr prosperite  
 Nor no thyng more may hertys disavaunce 650  
 Then of olde ioye newe remembraunce  
 ¶ Taketh example of Adam *and* of Eue

Maketh of them a mirroure in youre mynde  
 Where of reson it dide them gretlie greve  
 ffor to be put alas so ferre behynde  
 Oute of þat blys þei and all þeire kynde  
 Chaungyng þe state of immortalite  
 And become subiecte to deth *and* pouerte ·  
 ¶ Theire soden chaunge *and* þer vnwar myschefe  
 And þeir vnhappy transmutacioun 660  
 It was to them full vncouth *and* vnlefe  
 ffor to departe from þat mansion  
 That was so ful of delectacion  
 ffro such delicez sodenlie to go  
 In to this worlde · which is so full of woo  
 ¶ Ther is delite and here is sorow and care  
 Ther is ioy and here is heuynes  
 Ther is plente and here is euyl fare  
 Ther is helth and here is grete seknes  
 Here is trouble ay ment with oure vnsure gladnes 670  
 Ther is ay bly[s] and eternall glorie  
 And here is no myrth but fals and *transitorie*  
 ¶ Allas hough were þei blyndid in þeire sight  
 Thurgh veineglorie and fals ambicion  
 Thei we[n]t wronge þei lokyd not aryght  
 ffals couetise was þeire confusion  
 Wher thurgh þei lost þe dominacion  
 Of paradise · and wex both pore and and thrall  
 Theire fredam lefte and become mortall  
 ¶ On to godde þei wolde haue ben sembleable 680

**[3r, col. b]**

Lyke vnto hym godde and evyll knowe  
 And in theire truste for þei were not stable  
 ffrom þeire estate þei wer brought ful lowe  
 And þus þe seede was fyrste isowe  
 The rote plantid of disobeisaunce  
 Which brought oure linage to sorow *and* mischaunce  
 ¶ Thus cam in fyrste by inobedience  
 As by agate pouerte and nede  
 And at þeire bak folowed indigence  
 Sorow seknes maladie and drede 690  
 Exile banashyng and *seruitute* in dede  
 Which caused man longe to continue  
 Vndre þe lordeshyp and daunger of fortune  
 ¶ Thus cam in eke maladie and deth  
 To dispoile man of his beaute  
 Longe seknes and pestilence þat sleth

By soden stroke which no man may fle  
ffor vnto Adam and his posterite  
Deth was annexed by succession  
ffor his offence · and so conueied dovne 700

¶ffro man to man and euery maner age  
ffor who liste knowe syn brought in shame  
Man to be feble and feint in his passage  
And so by processe to wex halt and lame  
Vn to Adam þis was an vncouth game  
To be constreined from riche apparaile  
In baren erth s to seeke his vitaile  
¶In hungre and thyrste here he ledde his lyfe  
With swete and labour and tribulacions  
Endured also many mortall stryfe 710  
Of hote and colde right stronge passions  
Of elementes soden mutacions

Wynde hayle *and* reine ferfully fallyng  
And vnware strokes of thondir *and* lightnyng  
¶Thei stooode also in daunger and in drede  
Of cruell bestys Tigres and lions  
Of Tusshie bores who so taketh hede  
And in grete fere of theys fell Dragons  
Thasaut of serpentis and of Scorpions  
ffor thoo bestis þat afforn wer wylde 720  
Aftyr þeire synnyng · ful rage were *and* wylde

¶And wher þei stooode fyrste in sicurnes  
Of ioie and blys euer in on lastyng  
Oute of their reste þei fell in vnurnes  
In sorowe and sighyng and dolourus pleynyng  
And from ies continually wepyng  
The bittyr terys dayly didde styлле  
In this desert for wantyng of their wyll

¶And whethir were þei sorowfull or fayn  
Longe tyme aftyr þeire desolacion 730  
When þei founde Abel þeire own son slayn  
By cruel Caym to his confusion  
The same Caym as made is mencion  
Aftyr þat tyme wylde was and vagabun[de]  
Tyl blynde Lamech gaue hym his Dethes [wounde]

¶Adam nor Eue afforn þat ylke tyme  
Hadde neuer seen no feste funerall  
It was to þem a chaunge of newe pri[me]  
ffor to beholde a thyng dysnaturall  
Brethyrn of o wombe by hatered fr[aternal] 740  
That on of hate so for hym selfe devid[e]  
Of fals malice to be an homicide ·

[3v, col. a]

¶ And was it not a peine when þey stode  
ffor to beholde þeire son pale and dede  
Lygge on the grounde bathid in his bloode  
And all the soile where he lay was rede  
That when Adam and Eue token heede  
It was to them grete aduersite  
The newe slaughtyr to beholde and se  
¶ And euer emonge þeire sighes harde *and* soore 750  
Theire bittyr wepyng and sorowes to avaunce  
Or thei were ware · their herys wexen hoore  
And age began þeire beaute disavaunce  
Theire youth also by ful grete displesaunce  
Began to appall · or thei it couth espie  
By cruell constreinte and force of maladie  
¶ And when of youth fall was þeire floure  
By the processe of many hundred yerys  
And by the Duresse of many grete laboure  
They wex vnlusty · and outhlie of þeire cherys 760  
Of age and deth theis *benn* the daungers  
To sey chekmate in nature it is couthe  
Vn to beaute and grene lusty youth  
¶ ffor when the yerys fully passyd be  
Of flouryng age lastyng a ceson  
By processe at ie men may se  
Beaute declineth · his blossoms fallen down  
And lite and litle by succession  
Commyth crokyd elde vnwarlie crepyng  
With his potent ful poerlie manasshyng 770  
¶ Thus to oure fadre þat callyd was Adam  
Of creatures faryest of all fayre  
Aftyr grete age ~~þæt~~ by processe deth in cam  
And began vnwarlie ascende vpon þe steyre  
With his potente · *and* caste hym to repayre  
With Antropos · which afforn shal goon  
ffor to vntwyn hys lyves threde anon  
¶ And in hebron was made his sepulcure  
Ther aftyr belde amyghty grete cite  
By whos story and recorde of nature 780  
I may conclude who so liste to se  
That neuer man had liberte  
Sithen þat Adam oure lorde gan disobeie  
Agayns deth · but þat he muste dey  
¶ In compleynyng myn auctour Iohn Bochas  
fful pitevouslie in his aduertence



Bewepith wayleth and eft saith alas  
 In an Apple þer was so grete offence  
 That for a taste of inobedience  
 Adam alas shuld haue so grete a fall 790  
 So sodenlie to deth · and be mortall  
 ¶ Which example ought enowgh suffice  
 In all this worlde thof þer were no mo  
 Exemplifie to folkes þat ben wyse  
 Hough þis worlde is a thurgh fare ful of wo  
 Lyke fals fortune which turnyth to and fro  
 To make folkys when thei most clerlie shyne  
 In theire estatys onwarlie to decline  
 ¶ ffor thof þat þey þeire hedys lyft alofte  
 Hygh as phebus shyneth in hys spere 800  
 Thynketh þem self as it fallyth ofte  
 Theyre renoune rechith above þe sterrys clere  
 And hough þeire fame surmountyth euery spere

**[3v, col. b]**

The truste corrupte hath a soden fall  
 ffor to declare hough þei be mortall  
 ¶ O worldie folke aduertith and take intent  
 What vegeaunce and what punission  
 Godde shal take in his Iugement  
 ffor youre trespas and youre transgression  
 Which breke his trespas perceptis ageyn a[l resoun] 810  
 Ye haue forgetin hough with his prec[ious blood]  
 Yow for to saue · he starve on the rode  
 ¶ ffor yf Adam for his disobeisaunce  
 Was by þe lorde as he liste ordeigne  
 Made first and formyd with euery circ[umstaunce]  
 Of creatures to be m[o]s[t]e soueringne  
 Yf þat he was inbraced in the cheyne  
 Of seruitute · with thraldam ouers[eyn]  
 What shal I then of othir folkys [seyn]  
 ¶ That lyuen here in this deserte [of sorowe] 820  
 And in þis worlde at even and at [morwe] 822  
 Of erthlie ioy stande disconsolat[e]  
 All destitute and eke infortunat[e]  
 And forpossid with woo *and* wordlie trou[ble]  
 In this exile of plesaunce desolate 821  
 Ay variable and ful of chaunges double · 826  
 ¶ Ye not intende but to fals couetise  
 To fraude baret and extorcion  
 Agayn godde and trouth in many diuerse wyse  
 Agayn youre neyghburgh by fals collusion 830

To do hym wronge and oppression  
 And werste of all to reche not by synne  
 To sle youre soule · worldlie goode to wyn  
 ¶ And yf it fall youre power to be small  
 To complissh ~~in~~ youre Auarice in dede  
 Youre synfull wyll assentith ouer all  
 Thyng to desyre of which ye may not spede  
 And þus fals luste doth your bridyll lede  
 Trust in hauyng so sore yow doth assayle  
 ffalsly afferde · þe worlde wold yow fayle 840  
 ¶ And yf þat godde benigne and debonaire  
 With his yerde of casigacion  
 Chastise yowe but esylie and fayre  
 Ye gruge agayn his correccion  
 No thyng aduertyng in youre discrecion  
 Hough godde not badde vs whas can tak hede  
 Not for to striue nor to wrastill in dede  
 ¶ Nouthir oure strength nor oure myght t<sup>to</sup> applie  
 Vpon þe beste monstruus and sauage  
 Which is called þe Chemer of liey 850  
 Specially when he is in his rage  
 Which monstre hath to his avauntage  
 Hede of lion as bokys determyn  
 Wombe of gote and tayle serpentine  
 ¶ Which was outraide of Belloforon  
 As olde poetis make mencion  
 Nor godde badde þat men shulde goon  
 In to Colchos to Conquire with Iason  
 The flees of gold which in þat region  
 With fyry booles of metall made *and* brasse 860  
 And by a dragon streitlie kepte was ·  
 ¶ Godde bad vs not oure entres for to lete  
 To vndrefonge thyngis impossible  
 The Minotaure for to sle in Crete  
 Half man half bole and yf it be credible  
 Which was a monstre hateful *and* odible ·

**[4r, col. a]**

Whilom brought forth in bokys ye may se  
 By Minos wyfe callyd ~~passy~~ passiphe  
 ¶ Whos storie techith yf ye lyst to liere  
 This outhlie beste cruell and moustruus 870  
 [T]hurgh Adeian the kyngis doughter dere  
 [W]has whilom slayn by duk Theseus  
 [W]ithin a Caue made by Dedalus  
 [G]odde bidde not vs plenilie for his sake

[S]o grete emprises for to vndretake  
 ¶[He] bidde vs not to be so rechles  
 [In] perilus dedys þat be Merciall  
 [He] put vs in partie as dide Hercules  
 [Whi]ch by the byddyng in especiall  
 [Of] Euristeus the myghty kyng royall 880  
 [Lor]de of Athenes to make his honour shyne  
 [Ler]nyd of armys the famus discipline  
 ¶[Of h]is preceptis yf we haue a syght  
 [And r]emembre of hys high bonite  
 [He vs] comaundith thyngis þat bien light  
 [ffor to] complissh with all humilite  
 [ffro]m oure corage to avoide all vanite  
 [And] from oure hertys to exclude idilnes  
 And þe fals chaunge of all worldlie gladnes ·  
 ¶ffor vnto a man þat profite is and stable 890  
 By goode reason myn Auctour doth wel preve  
 Ther is no thyng more fare ~~and~~ ^nor^ agreable  
 Then finallie his vicius lyfe to leue  
 And on verray ~~god~~ goode right fully to beleue  
 Hym loue and worship above all worldlie þingis  
 Thys passeth the victorie of Emperours *and* kyngis  
 ¶The lorde bid eke who can discernen  
 Of entiere loue to do oure laboure  
 In this lyfe here so oure selfe gouerne  
 To fadre and modre þat we do du honoure 900  
 And in theire nede to do them socoure  
 And in all *virtues* oure frendys to comforte  
 And to oure powere · in myschese them supporte  
 ¶ffor in this worlde is nothyng so perfite  
 Nor to accomplissh thyng of more plesaunce 905  
 In litle goode to haue suffisaunce 907  
 And be content in his gouernaunce  
 Than a man for to haue delice 906  
 Voide Auarice · and thynken euer emonge 909  
 To his neighborh þat he do no wronge 910  
 ¶Not to Couet his goodes in no wyse  
 Hym selfe gouerne like to his estate  
 Not to excede but flee and eke despise  
 All maner loue which is disordinate  
 Hym selfe preseruyng from stryfe and debat  
 And specially to eschewe it is goode  
 Slaughtir *and* mordre *and* shedyng of mannys blode  
 ¶ffle frome his synne and hate for to lie  
 Of olde offences emonge haue repentaunce  
 And to eschewe all scorne and mokerie 920

Agayn vites do almez and penaunce  
 And to haue moste soveraignelie plesaunce  
 To su the pathys of oure lorde Ihesu  
 True exemplarie of grace and of vertu  
 ¶ Which for oure sake and oure redempcion  
 And for oure loue was naylyd on a tre  
 Suffyrd peine and cruel passion  
 And nothyng askith of high ne lowe degre  
 Recompensid agaynwarde for to be  
 But þat we set all holy oure intentes  
 ffor to fulfill his commaundmentis  
 ¶ And of his grace here in this mortall lyfe  
 As we *precelle* in wysdome and reson

930

**[4r, col. b]**

And of hys gyftys haue aprerogatyue  
 Beforn all bestys by discrecion  
 Ther for lete vs of hoole intencion  
 As we of reson bestys ferre excede  
 Let vs afforn them by worde example and dede  
 ¶ Grounde vs fyrste vpon humilite  
 Oure pompus ien meklie to vnclose  
 Incline oure hedys and to conceine *and* se  
 All worldlie welth shal fade as a rose ·  
 And of meke herte let vs oure selfe dispose  
 By this Tragedie to haue knoulegyng  
 Of oure myscheue hough þe rote *and* begynnyng  
 ¶ Was þe vice of Inobedience  
 Surquedie and fals ~~dis~~ disobeisaunce  
 As myn Auctour hath shewed in sentence  
 Inprinte it well in youre remembraunce  
 Se wher s the serpent with hys deceyvaunce  
 The flesh · þe ~~wol~~ worlde *your* ennemies all thre  
 Thurgh þeire treines þat ye not deceiued be  
 ¶ Your best shelde to make resistance  
 Agayn þeire powere sothlie is meknes  
 Your haburyon most myghty of defence  
 The fendys myght to venquissh *and* expresse  
 Is to remembre deuoutlie with lownes  
 Hough mekelie criste to paye oure ravesum  
 Suffyrd on a crosse · deth and passion  
 ¶ Wherby men may þat prudent be and wyse  
 The ioyes clayme which been eternall  
 And entre agayn in to paradise  
 ffro wheine ~~set~~ somtyme Adam hadde a fall  
 To which place aboue celestiall

940

950

960

O criste Ihesu þu bring vs to þat glorie ·  
 Which by thy deth haddyst þe victorie ·  
 ¶ Soden departyng oute of felicite  
 In to miserie · of mortall hevynesse  
 Onware depriuynge of oure prosperite  
 Chaunge of gladnes in to wrecchydnes 970  
 Longe languisshyng in wo and bittyrnes  
 Continuell sorowe drede dole and pestilence ·  
 Were fyrste inbrought by Inobedience  
 ¶ Adam and Eue loste þeire liberte  
 Theire fraunches and þeire blessidnes  
 Put in to exile and captiuite  
 To lyve in laboure wo and pensiuenes ·  
 Thurgh fals desyres and pompus wylfulnes  
 To þe serpent when he yaue credence  
 Theire lorde mystrustyng thurgh Inobedience 980  
 ¶ But O alas wher as þei were fre  
 Of ioy eternall stode in syc'urnes  
 They were to blynde alas it was pite  
 To leve þeire reste and lyve in werynes  
 All þeire ofspryng to bryng in distres  
 Drawyng fro godde his du reuerence  
 Thurgh fals consentyng to Inobedience  
 ¶ Wher for princes avyslie doth se  
 As this Tragedie in man berith witnes  
 Where as wantith in any comynthe 990  
 Subieccion for lakkyng of meknes  
 And with powere pride hath an I[n]teresse]  
 Ther foloweth aftyr thurgh frowarde [insolence]  
 Amonge þe peple fals inobedience  
 ¶ And noble *princes* which haue þe s[ouereyn]te]  
 To governe þe peple in rightuesness  
 Lyke as ye cherish þem in pes an [vnyte]  
 Or frowardlie destrue them or op[presse]

**[4v, col. a]**

So agaynwarde þeire corages þei wyll dresse  
 Lowlie to obey ʒ to youre magnificence 1000  
 Or disobeie by Inobedience  
**De casu Nemroth · et De fluuio Noe**  
 Myn auctour Bochas as he þat vndrestode  
 The vengeaunce and mishevys huge  
 Which þat godde toke with Noes floode  
 When he sent an vniuersall deluge  
 Agayn the which þer was no refuge  
 Saue viii persones in that mortall woo

Within a shippe were saued and no moo  
 ¶ Wherfore myn auctour lightlie ouergoth  
 Makith of þat age no speciall remembraunce 1010  
 But passith ouer from Adam to Nembroth  
 Consideryng hough þat in þat dedelie chaunce  
 The lorde for synne tok so grete vengeaunce  
 That by writyng or storie nor victorie  
 Of high ne lowe was left no memorie  
 ¶ ffor þer was non lefte · cronicle nor no booke  
 Aftyr the floode þat made mencion  
 Of noon auctour whoso liste to loke  
 ffor all was brought destruccion  
 With deluge withoute excepcion 1020  
 ffor which myn auctour transportid hath his stile  
 And of þat tyme liste no thyng compile ·  
 ¶ He hadde no matier wheron he myght founde  
 Nor set his fote by noon auctorite  
 Nor no trouth his purpos vnto grounde  
 Of olde writyng þat he couth see  
 ffor which hym thought of necessite  
 The surplusage of myght lete  
 And aftyr Adam with Nembroth to mete ·  
 ¶ And certis lyk as Bochas in his booke 1030  
 Remembreth fyrste of Adam þe storie  
 So nexte in ordre he the storie toke  
 To speke of Nembroth and his surquedye  
 Which here fyrste as bookes specifie  
 Aftyr the floode his wawes gan aswage  
 Was made a lorde to gouerne in þat age  
 ¶ ffor when þe floode gan disincrece  
 And gon his vengeaunce began to modifie  
 Withdrawe his hande þe watir þan gan cese  
 Vpon þe mountenis high of Ermenie 1040  
 The Shippe gan reste the bible cant not lie  
 [In] And in þat age called þe secunde  
 Linage of man · began fyrste to habounde · 1043  
 ¶ He made a maner coniuracion 1072  
 This frowarde geaunt and a conspiracie  
 Toke his counsell by false collusion  
 Hys myght his powere for to multiplie  
 And his estate for to glorifie  
 Thof he wolde of his intente not fayle  
 Godde and the hevyn proudlie to assaile  
 [¶] That maugre godde which governeth all  
 [H]e thought he wolde proudlie tak on hande 1080  
 [A]gayn deluges yf eny fall shall

[O]f prouidence plenilie them to withstonde  
 [Hym]selfe to assure and make place on londe  
 [That] shuld hym kepe and be to hym defence  
 [Bothe] agayn godde and watris violence ·  
 ¶[And that] þei myght accomplissh þeire entente  
 [Lich thei]re desyre þei did þeire laboure  
 [Took] þeire counsell all by on assent  
 [Chose] Nembroth þeire duke þeire gouernoure  
 [Hem to] conveie and to do them socoure · 1090

**[4v, col. b]**

To be þeire guyde afforn as þei were ware  
 Towarde a cuntre which callyd is Sennar 1092  
 ¶Thus of Nembroth increce began the nam[e] 1107  
 And in his peples reputacion  
 Of golde and riches he hadde so grete a f[ame]  
 They callid hym godde in their opinion 1110  
 Most worthi moste myghty of renoune  
 The worlde eke hole vndre his obeisan[ce]  
 As godde and lorde he toke þe gouernaunc[e]  
 ¶Vndre whos myght the peple gan *procede*  
 He as a lorde havyng inspeccion  
 Persyng the bowell of the erthe in de[de]  
 To make myghty þeire fundacion  
 And of fals glorie and fals ambicion  
 This proude Nembroth in his appetite  
 To se the werke hadde ful grete delite 1120  
 ¶Hys ioy was and his inware gladne[s]  
 To beholde so grete a companie  
 Percen the erth by so grete depnes  
 To make the grounde stronge by mas[ounrie]  
 The werke vpwarde to fortifie  
 With many a stone huge *and* large of wei[ght]  
 They haue it reysyd up in the aer of hyght ·  
 ¶And finallie by mediacion  
 Of his grete werke Nembroth wexed famus  
 Takyng in hert grete consolacion 1130  
 That by report he was so glorijs  
 Of so grete myght and of a port so pompus  
 That he was so myghty ~~so wyde large~~ *and longe* ^riche and stronge^  
 To reyse a toure so wyde large and longe  
 ¶ffor to this day touchyng the grete myght  
 Of this toure which men Babel call  
 Men from full ferre may haue þe rof a syght  
 It suremountith oþer tourys all  
 Of which werk it is befall

Of serpente and many a grete dragon 1140  
 It is nowe callide chef habitacion  
 ¶ That no man dare as ferre as þei it se  
 ffor wykkyd aer and ~~from~~ ^for^ corrupcion  
 By a grete space and by a grete cuntre  
 Approche so nere ~~þer~~ þat mervelus dungeon  
 So venymus is þat mansion  
 And so venymus þat no man dare approche  
 Lyke to a mounteine beldid on craggy roche  
 ¶ And as men sayn þat haue hadde þer to repaire  
 This toure attenieth vnto þe sterrys clere 1150  
 And transcendith the Regioun of þe aier  
 The stone the syment were made of such matier 1152  
 Thof fyre or watyr both it did assaile 1154  
 But litil or nought þeire power shuld avayle  
 ¶ It was made so myghty to indure  
 So well assured by disposicion  
 þat in this worlde no lyuyng creature  
 Sawe neuer non lyk in comparison  
 Whos reysyng vp was chef occasion 1160  
 And the riches of masonrie  
 Wherthurgh Nembroth of pride *and* surquedie  
 ¶ Demyd proudlie as in his advis  
 He transcendid all oþer of nobles  
 Thof hym selfe/moste myghty *and* moste wys  
 ffelow to godde as by liknes  
 But godde þat can all worldlie pride oppresse  
 And make princes eclipsen in þeire glorie

[5r, col. a]

Such as truste in thyngys transitorie ·  
 ¶ The same lorde of his eternall myght 1170  
 This toure which Nembroth liste to edyfie  
 He made with thondir *and* with leven light  
 Therof to fall a ful grete partie  
 The boistes wyndes and þe rage skye  
 And goddes power on þat oþer syde  
 Began this abate a parcell of his pride  
 ¶ And in descent *and* fallyng of toure stonys  
 Of the werkmen ful many a man was dede  
 And oppressid þeire bak · and breke þeire bonys  
 The masonrie wi[t]h the blode was rede 1180  
 Yit proude Nembroth þat of this werk was hede  
 With all his signes his lorde he list not knowe  
 ffor hys pompe aftyr was brought full lowe  
 [¶] But in his errour procedeth forth of newe



Thof [h]e wyld gete hymselfe a name  
 Of malencolie gan chaunge lok *and* chere  
 And gan also attempte and atame  
 ffor to encrece and magnifie his name  
 Anew toure to edifie agayn  
 Lyke as godde hadde be blynd *and* nothyng seyn 1190  
 ¶ He wolde haue raught vp to þe sterrys sevyn  
 By assent of them þat gan hym fyrst counsail  
 Robbyd godde and from hym take þe heuyn  
 But who *presumyth* þe lorde aboue to assaile  
 It were no reson þat he shuld availe  
 Princes may well agayn hym crye lowde  
 But his powere may clypse with no clowde  
 ¶ ffor in þe myddes of hys grete empryses  
 Thys proude Nembroth makynge hys masons  
 ffor to compas *and* to caste þeire devises 1200  
 Geometries and þeire diuisiones  
 But godde þat hath hys inspeccions  
 Seyng the intents of euery erthly man  
 As he þat is moste myghty and beste can  
 ¶ Agayn þeire [ma]lice make resistence  
 Theire worldlie power þeire *dominacion*  
 Of hys vengeable *and* moste magnificence  
 He can chastyse and ouerwhelon don  
 The pryde of princes in euery region  
 By example of Nembroth anon ye shal here 1210  
 Whos pompe raught aboue þe sterrys clere  
 ¶ ffor when hys werkmen stode at avauntage  
 And most wexed bysy to hys intencioun  
 And to fortyme speke all oon language  
 All sodenlie by transmutacion  
 There was of tongys made a diuision  
 That in þeire wyrkyng as þei gan abrayde  
 No man wyste what þat oþer sayde  
 ¶ And it is lyklye acordynge with reson  
 So as þeire chaunge was made of þer langages 1220  
 So of þeire hertys wer made diuision  
 Both of þeire wylle *and* of þeire corages  
 And in descendynge of þer werkyng stages  
 Þere was such chaunge of broþer vnto broþer  
 Lyke *straungers* non knewe þe intende of oþer  
 ¶ Myn auctour troweth þat þis diuersite  
 Was for þeire gylte causyd by vengeaunce

[5r, col. b]

Of els godde of ryght and equite

Disposid hath in hys ordinaunce  
 To be among them so grete variaunce 1230  
 That þurgh þe worlde · þei shuld þemselfe diuide  
 And from Nembroth Disseuer · *and* not abyde  
 ¶ They gan anon among þemselfe disdeigne  
 To accepte þis Nembroth for þeire kyng  
 Yit emonge them forsoth þer were no tweine  
 On of an oþer þat hadde clene knowyng  
 Nor of þeire spech þat knewe þe pleine menyng  
 ffor which þe cuntre of Sennar they forsoke  
 And ychon of them a diuerse cuntre toke  
 ¶ They departid *and* made no lengar space 1240  
 ffolowyng þeire fortune of þeir diuision  
 And to chese þem newe dwellyng places  
 In þe parties of many a Region  
 And þis Nembroth was partid *and* put adoun  
 And of Babel þe myghty famus toure  
 He was no lengar callyd possessoure  
 ¶ ffor agayn þe pride of þis Nembroth  
 ffrowarde fortune gan his course to varie  
 And godde also was in man wroth  
 Of surquedie þat he was so contrarie 1250  
 And for þe place was wylde and solitarie  
 Of þis Sennar furius *and* sauage  
 Nembroth gan feble and fall in grete age  
 ¶ And yit sume bokys of hym specifie  
 Hough he was frowarde of hys condicion  
 And was fyrste foundar of ydolatrie  
 And fynder vp of fals religion  
 Causyng peples to holde opinion  
 Goddys to worship in paganysme wyse  
 ffounder of rightes *and* of false sacrifise 1260  
 ¶ Towarde Perce he chese hys dwellyng place  
 The which cuntre is in the orient  
 þat his lordeshippes shuld strecche a grete space  
 He boundid hym into þe occidente  
 ffor perce londe hath his extente  
 Towarde the parties of þe reede see  
 And þis londe perce who þat liste to se  
 ¶ As bookys olde remembre *and* put in mynde  
 Hough þat perce castith environ  
 Septemtrion and the gretter Inde 1270  
 And many an oþer myghty region  
 Wher Nembroth hadde fyrste *dominacion*  
 Which extendith as bookys specifie  
 Oute of Mede into Germanie

¶ But in lordeshippes as myn auctour seith  
 Without þat vertu be þeir true guyde  
 In them is suraunce noon nor feith  
 Thyng þat passith may no while abide  
 Werfor Bochas in despite of pryde  
 And in rebukyng of all follis proude  
 Makyng his compleint creith to þem ful lowde  
 ¶ Ye all proude most royall in *your* flourys  
 Which moste truste for to reigne longe  
 Dressith vp youre rochis and *your* tourys  
 And agayn godde make *yourself* stronge  
 And youre power proudelie vndirfonge  
 Youreselfe with pride for to magnifie

1280

[5v, col. a]

Agayn the heuyn to holde chanpartie  
 ¶ Belde youre castells reyse þem vp on hyght  
 Of Adamaunt with yrne stronge bounde  
 With a square stonys large *and* hoge of weight  
 Reyse vp youre wallys most myghty *and* profounde  
 And shit youre Dongeons with myghty cheynes rounde  
 Let men of armys who euer wake or slepe  
 Night and day *your* so streythe kepe  
 ¶ As godde ne man in youre opinions  
 Youre fortresse ne myght not assayle  
 Youre castels nor youre stronge dongeons  
 Stuffid with men and vitall  
 Lyk to stond euer and neuer to fayle  
 As godde not myght agayn *your* fals puissaunce  
 When euer hym liste of right do vengeance  
 ¶ Settith afforn youre ien þat be blynde  
 The monstruus werke of the grete Babilon  
 The pryde of Nembroth þer was put behynde  
 Maugre hys myght and hys toure smyt down  
 ffor all the crafte of werkmen or mason  
 Destruede was with a soden leven  
 To avenge hys pride sent down from heuyn  
 ¶ ffor þof youre strenkithes so assured be  
 That non ingine may þerto atteine  
 Gunne nor bumbarde by no subtilite  
 Shot or Arblaste nor no shot of dondeyne  
 Yit godde þat is lorde and souereigne  
 Which lyk desertez can both spyll and saue  
 May all confounde with an erthquaue  
 ¶ Myn auctour askith what castell or what toure  
 May be so stonge made in eny wyse

1290

1300

1310

But þat by meene of summe fals traitour  
 Or by summe wey þat he can devyse 1320  
 It may be loste or solde for couetyse  
 And deliuerde for all the stronge bondys  
 Into the power of ennemyes handys  
 ¶ Or by othir soden aventure  
 Castells Cites and many a riche town  
 Haue ben left þat þer myght not þem assure  
 ffor to resiste agayne fals treson  
 Summe haue be loste eke by rebellion  
 And all þeis menys þe trouth to begynne  
 Is punisshyng which godde sent for synne 1330  
 ¶ Godde hath a mille handys to chastyse  
 A mille ð dartys of punisshion  
 A mille bowes made in diuerse wyse  
 A mille Arblastres bent in hys dongeon  
 Ordeigned ichon for castigacion  
 But whoso fynde in meknes *and* repentaunce  
 Mercy is maistres and hys ordinaunce  
 ¶ Ye þat be wyse considir hough þe rote  
 Of vices all is pride ye may wel se  
 Pullith hym doune · put hym vndir fote 1340  
 And take youre counsel of humilite  
 And yf ye liste to stande in surte  
 Beldith in hert for more sicurnes  
 A toure of vertue groundid in meknes  
 ¶ Whos masunrie is of no castage  
 Of *vertuus* grounde and *souereigne*  
 Blastys of wyndes and weddyrs rage  
 Nor no tempest hasty nor sodeine  
 Pompe nor boste þof þei do þeire peine  
 This *vertu* meknes for to vndirmyne 1350  
 They be to feble to make hyr to incline

**[5v, col. b]**

¶ ffor wher meknes is groundid verrelie  
 Thof she sumtyme fele aduersite  
 He passeth on and suffirith pacientlie  
 And venquesshyth al *maner* enmyte  
 The assaut also of contrariete  
 Of infortune and of worldlie trouble  
 And of victorie conquerith a palme double  
 ¶ And thof meknes amyddes þe floode flowe  
 Of worldlie myschefe and *persequucion* 1360  
 While pacience in hyr bote doth rowe  
 Thow frowarde wawes pos vp and doun

A calme shal folowe of consolacion  
When stormy wyndes þeir blaste haue leyd l[owe]  
The name of Meknes shal shew *and* be wel k[nowe]  
¶She may be troubild but ouercome nevir  
And for a tyme she may suffre werre  
But at the ende she venquissith euer  
On londe on se where she be nere or fer[e]  
To the haven of lyfe she was sure lodeste[re] 1370

I take recorde of the humilite  
Of Marie so blessid myght she be  
¶The rote of meknes floureth vp so fayre  
Whos beaute dredith no tribulacions  
In Somer · wyntyr hys flourys not appayre ·  
And hir rote laste in al maner of cesons  
Pryde may assayle with hys bosoful sownies  
But finalli for hir increce of glorie  
With humbles she wynnyth the victorie  
¶O folkys þat this Tragedie do rede 1380

Haue vnto meknes amonge *your* aduertence  
Of proude Nembroth also takith hede  
Hough þat he fell from hys magnificence  
Only for he by sturdie violence  
Liste of malice the myghty lorde assaile  
But in such case what myght hys pride availe  
¶Noble princes which þis worlde doth possed  
Ye þat be famus of wysdom and prudence  
And haue so many senectes in youre drede  
In gouernaunce vndir *your* excellence 1390

Let your power with meknes so dispens  
þat false pride oppresse not þe poraile  
Which to youre nobles so mych may availe  
¶Pride of Nembroth did the bridil lede  
Which hym conveide to grete Insolence  
Pride *per*teineth nothyng to manhode  
Saue in þe armys to shewe hys *presence*  
Wherfore honour laude and reuerence  
Be to meknes þat hath the gouernaile  
Of all *virtues* · which may most availe 1400

**De casu Cadmi Regis Egipti et aliorum regnum**

Theis olde poets with þer sawes swete  
fful couertlie in þeir *verses* do feine  
Hough olde Saturne was sumtyme kyng of Crete  
And of custum did hys bysy peyn  
Of hys godhede liste for to ordeiyne  
That he should os of hys nature  
Ichon deuoure as by hys ingendure

¶ In this matier shortlie to soiourne  
To vndirstond of poets þe processe  
They mene pleinilie at þis worde *Saturne* 1410  
Doth in itself nothyng but tyme expresse  
And philosophirs also bere witnes  
þat as in tyme althyng is forth brought  
Somtyme ayenwarde bryngith althyng to nowght  
¶ Clerkys recorde eke in their writyng

[6r, col. a]

Vndir supporte as I dare reherce  
Hough þat fyre wastith euery thyng  
And yrne harde doth nesh þings perce  
Yf oute abyde þat may not it ansuerse  
Yit comyth tyme and by *continuaunce* 1420  
All he consumith with hys sherpe launce

¶ Hys sherpe tothe of consumpcion  
In stille wyse doth hys bysy cure  
ffor to avauntage in conclusion  
All thyng is forth brought by nature  
By longe abydyng as thof men hadde be  
ffor olde thyng devouryd men may se  
fferre oute of mynde os thof had be

¶ Who can or may remembre in eny wyse  
The glorijs prowes of theis princes olde 1430  
Or the nobles of philosophirs wyse  
[O]r of poets the semyng to vnfolde  
Process of yerys alas as I yowe tolde  
Devouride hath þeire fame and their nobles  
Derked þeire renoun by foryetylnes

¶ Thus of þeire names is lefte no memorie  
Tyme with his reson hath do so grete vengeaunce  
Shoven away the honour and the glorie  
fful many a noble ful myghty of puissaunce  
That þer is lefte now no remembraunce 1440  
Of princes poets no philosophirs  
ffor when deth naylyd them in þeire cofyrs

¶ Cam tyme vpon · and by processe of yerys  
Their memorie hath duskyd þeire mynd ·  
And reuolucion of the heuynlie sperys  
By oft turnyng þeire glorie haue left behynde  
Thus euery thyng which subiecte is to kynde  
Is in this lyf withoute more avauntage  
Wastyd with tyme and processe of longe age

¶ In the fyrste age from Adam to Noe 1450  
Prudent listris which liste in bokys rede

ffynde of fortune no mutabilite  
 Nor of hyr chaunge þei tok no hede  
 But from Adam þei reknyd bine indede  
 Vnto Nembroth by turnyng of þe heuyn  
 A mille yere · D · CC · and · xj ·  
 ¶ In which space who þat considreth will  
 Thei be nothyng writ in especiall  
 Signe of memorie nor spok of neuer a dele  
 Which iche þat be notable nor historiall 1460  
 But fro tyme Nemroth hadde a fall  
 Vnto Cadmus þe yerys to conteine  
 They were mille · CCCC · and · xiiij ·  
 ¶ Touchyng as Cadmus as Bochas liste indite  
 It is rehersed by Rethoricions  
 Hough on vixoses in bokys as þei write  
 Was made kyng fyrste of Egipcions  
 Wher philosophirs and Nigromancions  
 Began fyrste to habounde þer renoun to avaunce  
 Nachor þat tyme hauyng the governaunce 1470  
 ¶ Of the hebrues as made is mencion  
 Aftyr Nembroth by true rehersaile  
 CCC · yere by computacion  
 iiij<sup>xx</sup> · and xij · Which tyme it is no fayle  
 Pat vixoses gan werre *and* begynne bataile  
 Of volunte againe straunge nacions  
 And to coquere cites borowes and townys  
 ¶ By force oonlie without title or right  
 He wanne all Egipte to increce his name  
 But for all þat who liste to haue a sight 1480  
 Per is nowe lefte no reporte of his fame  
 Saue Bochas writith hough he fyrste did ataine  
 His myghty conquest of intencion  
 Ascribed were vnto hys worthy dome

**[6r, col. b]**

¶ And þe residue and þe surplusage  
 Of golde of tresure of goode and of riches  
 Pat ascribed were to hys avauntage  
 Turne shulde to comyn *profite* and besynes  
 ffor hym semyd as to hys worthines  
 Reporte myght it and was to hym more nerre 1490  
 Boue singlerte hys comynte to preferre  
 ¶ Eke Thanaus of Cithe fyrste kynge  
 When Saruch was duke and souereigne  
 Ouer þe Iewes by record of writyng  
 CC · yere · lxx<sup>ti</sup> · and eke tweine

Aftyr nembroth this Thanaus gan ordeigne  
 A myghtie power and a stronge bataile  
 Them of Cithie proudlie to assaile  
 ¶ Conquering from thens in to þe Ile  
 Callyd Ponto · in full cruell wyse 1500  
 And þof his lordeship laste not but a while  
 All þat he wan it was Coutise  
 And as Bochas doth of theis folk devise  
 Processe of yerys for all þeire grete puissance  
 Hath put þeire namys out of remembraunce  
 ¶ Zorastes eke for all hys grete myght  
 Of Vactrians kynge and possessoure  
 Lorde of Trace and a ful manlie knyght  
 Of all hys dedys and hys grete labour  
 Ne of þis ^hys^ conquest ne of hys grete honour 1510  
 Is nothyng lefte of writyng vs befor  
 Saue þat he laughed þe oure þat he was born  
 ¶ He gan ful sone for to be myrie  
 With soden laughter at hys natiuite  
 And worthy Nynus þat was of Assure  
 Expounde hys laughter to grete felicite  
 The which Nynus wan many a stronge cite  
 And day be day his power gan to increce  
 ffor which he wolde of his power not cese  
 ¶ ffor þis is þe maner of þeis conqueroures 1520  
 Whan þei haue hadde in armys a victorie  
 Thei doon þeire myght þeire peine *and* þeire labours  
 With newe emprises to be put in memorie  
 ffor þeire corages supprised with veine glorie  
 Can not be still content in þeire astate  
 Tyl þeire paradie sey to them chekmate  
 ¶ ffortune of armys in bokys ye may rede  
 With a fals laughter on folkys doth she smyle  
 She frowarde euer or thei can take heede  
 Of hyr nature wyll falslie them begyle 1530  
 Conquest be werre · las[tith] but awhyle  
 ffor who by deth doth st[urdi] violence  
 Godde wyl by deth hys ven[ge]aunce recompens  
 ¶ This worthye Ninus ~~hath so well hym boore~~ ^gan myghtily preuaile^  
 Agayn Zorastes of whom I spa[ke] before  
 ffor he with hym faught laste [in] bataile  
 ffor which Ninus hath so well hym bore  
 That Zorastes hath þe felde lore  
 And he was Auctour as bokys specifie  
 Of fals Magik and Nigromauncye 1540  
 ¶ He founde þe nature of euery element



Theire kyndlie werkyng in their mutacions  
The course of sterrys and of þe firmament  
Theire influences þeire disposicions  
Theire Aspectes and þeire coniuncions  
Wrote in pillers devised of metall  
The · vii · sciences callyd liberall  
¶ Eke in pylers of brique full harde bake  
Which were vpset longe large *and* hoge

[6v, col. a]

He gan eke write them and also vndirtake 1550  
To make them sure as for þeire refuge  
That þei shuld by floode nor no deluge  
Diffacide ben as of þeire scripture  
But in their gravynge *perpetuelly* indure  
¶ But þof Zorastes þeis craftys fyrste oute founde  
ffull litle or nought to hym it myght availe  
And thof he were a goode knyght of hys hande  
He was of Ninus slayn in bataile  
Loste hys realme *and* royall apparaile  
And Ninus died within a litill throwe 1560  
But in what wyse þe storie is not knowe  
¶ Eke of Moydes kyng of Sodome  
I fynde of hym no memorie by writyng  
Saue in a storie · men may rede and se  
He and his peple were fre in their lyvyng  
But he þat was of Assyryens kyng  
Thurgh fals fortune þat can so oft varie  
To Babilonye made them tributarie  
¶ We haue eke seyn and redde also 1570  
The vengeaunce and the pestilence  
Doon in Egipte to kyng Pharao  
ffor þat he make a maner of resistance  
Agayns godde of wylfull negligence  
Therefore hys peple vpon a day and he  
Were drenchyd ichon in ny ^mydde^ of þe reede se  
¶ The peples of Egipte ^godde^ ledde by Moyses  
Without trouble of eny maner wawe  
Went ychon saue in quiete and pees  
And pharao as he can after drawe  
Them to pursu by a full mortal lawe 1580  
In hys pursute frowarde and atteinte  
Amonge þe wawes with hys oste was dreinte  
¶ In Exodo ben the mencions  
Cereuslie put in remembraunce  
The xii · plages and *persecucions*

In Egipte don by full grete vengeaunce  
 And of þeire tresoure and þeire grete substaunce  
 They wer dispoyled by hebrues it is tolde  
 Of þeire vesels of syluer and of golde  
 ¶ And oute of Egipte ful grete tresour þat he ledde 1590  
 Such as hym thought þat myght hym most availe  
 And Pharao I fynde þat he hadde  
 CC · Chares inarmyd for bataile  
 Israel to pursu and proudlie to assaile  
 And · l · mille · in whom was no lak  
 Of men of armys folowyng on horsbakke  
 ¶ CC · mille · of fotemen hym aboute  
 And of Egipte all hys Chyuallrie  
 And pharao with all hys grete route  
 Began Israel pursu of envie 1600  
 But for hys pride and fals surquedie  
 He and hys peple were drownyd euerychon  
 Of all hys noumbir þer was left not oon  
 ¶ Hys frowarde hert agayn godde inaniate  
 ffulfyllyd of malice and obstinacie  
 And hys purpose proude and obstinate  
 Theys foule vices or he couthe them asprie  
 ffrom hys glorie and hys regallie  
 He was caste doune þof he befor was coroned  
 And amydde þe se among his peple drounyd 1610  
 ¶ An oþer prince callid Oggigus  
 Kynge of Thebes os bokys determyne  
 And founder was þis bookys tellith vs

**[6v, col. b]**

Of a Cite callid Elleusine  
 Which stand in Grece whos power to decline  
 Ther fell a floode in þat region  
 Which ouerflowed many a riche town  
 ¶ And in Achaia it did meste damage  
 In tyme of Iacob þe patriak notable  
 And þis deluge · with hys wawes rage 1620  
 Slewe lordes many and princes honorable  
 ffor dame fortune is so deceiueable  
 That she sumwhile when she liste disdeigne  
 Can folke assaile with a flode sodeine  
 ¶ This floode also where it did assaile  
 Wastid cornys both croppe and rote  
 Causid also scarite of vitaile  
 That many a man felt ful vnsote  
 The poore not wyste · wher to fynde bo[te]

ffor þeire *princes* suppressid were with [drede] 1630  
 Thurgh lak of vitaile in þat gret[e] nede  
 ¶ An oþer floode þat was in Thessalie  
 In the tyme whan þat kyng Amphioune  
 Helde þe sceptre and þe regallie  
 Vpon Thebes þe myghty stronge toun  
 Besyde þe kyngdom of  
 The same tyme þei fell Doutles  
 Whan goddys peple was ledde by Moyses  
 ¶ With þis floode þe londe hadde be devourid  
 Of Thesalie and of þat region 1640  
 But by on Pernaso þe peple was socourid  
 And on þe rochis þat stode environ  
 ffounde þeire refute and þeire sauacion  
 And grete socoure tyl þe floode rage  
 Gan to discrees withdraw and aswage  
 ¶ In olde stories also ye may rede  
 When Cicrops hadde fyrste possession  
 Of Athene þe myghty stronge cite  
 And heete fell on þat region  
 By influence þat descendid doune 1650  
 ffrom þe bodies aboue celestiall  
 Which lyklie was to deuoure all  
 ¶ And þis hete ingendred with the sunne  
 In diuerse cuntres both in length *and* brede  
 Hath hys course so myghtyly begunn  
 That ~~many~~ many folkes fell in grete drede  
 Ryvers welles who þat liste to rede  
 Consumyd were and driede vp ichon  
 The hete callid þe imbracyng of pheton  
 ¶ We haue eke redde in stories here beforne 1660  
 Hough þat Isys to Egipte toke hyr flyght  
 Oute of Grece þe true doughter born  
 Of Promotheus a ful manlie knyght  
 And þis Isys in euery mannes syght  
 So fressh so goodlie weddid by hyr lyve  
 To worthy Apis þat was kyng of Agyve  
 ¶ The which Isis excellent of beaute  
 Aftyr tyme hyr fadre was Igraue  
 She was put for more surte  
 Vndir hyr vncle þat shulde kepe *and* saue 1670  
 Thys saide mayde þat no man shuld hyr haue  
 And hyr vncle in Ouide ye may se  
 Lyke as he write was callid Epimethe  
 ¶ And flouryng vp in hyr tendre age  
 The saide maide so plesaunt was *and* mete

[7r, col. a]

Of semblenes loke and of visage  
þat Iubiter þe myghty kyng of Crete  
Was enamoured with hyr for to mete  
And she excitede of femynite  
Inclined hyr herte vnto hys deite 1680

[¶] And for she was of hir intent so clene  
Obeyying hym in the moste louly wyse  
Of Argivois he made hyr to be plene  
Be cause þat she was smyt with couetise  
Agayn Argus averre she gan devyse  
And for he was onweldie of his age  
He Hyr to ~~wist~~ withstond he found *non* avauntage

[¶] But yit fortune began on hyr to frowne  
And kyng Argus s thurgh hys subtilite  
With hys counsaile so prudentlie gan rowne 1690

[T]hat she was take by full grete cruelte  
[A]nd hyr soldioures were eke made to sle  
[And b]y Argus þer gayned no raunsom  
[She] fet[ri]d was and put in strenge prison

[¶] But hyr son goode Mercurius  
[R]yght fresh right lusty and ful of hardynes  
[A]nd of hys hert Inlie coragius  
Agayn Argus gan his power dresse  
And so intierlie did hys bysynes  
That he was slayn in conclusion 1700  
And Isis aftyr deliuerde from prison

¶ Of hyr sleightes aftyrwarde not feinte  
She toke a shippe and into Egipte wente  
In which ship þer was a cough depeinte  
And Thourye whom Iubiter eke sent  
Is goon with hyr both of oon intende  
To make a mariage aftyr anon right  
Betwen hir and apis a *prince* of ful grete myght

¶ She was right wyse above all creatures  
Secret of cunnyng well expert in science 1710  
She taught fyrste *literes* and figures  
To Egipciens by pleine experience  
Gafe them cunnyng and intelligence  
To tylle þeir londe · taught þeir laborers  
To sowe þeire grayne and multiplie be yerys  
¶ And in Egipte hir fame and hir renoun  
Gan day be day wex and hir worthines  
Holde of cunnyng and reputacion  
By signes shewed not oonlie a *princes*

But she was holde amonge them a goddessse 1720  
 And with worshippes which þat were diuine  
 And sacrificis to hyr þei did incline  
 ¶ But to declare pleyndlie at a worde  
 Amyddes of all grete prosperite  
 Myghty Apis hyr husband and hir lorde  
 Prince of Egipte *and* duke of þat cuntre  
 Son to Iubiter and of Nyobe  
 Which Niobe by large descendyng  
 The doughter was of pheroneus þe kyng  
 ¶ And phoroneus fyrste þe lawes founde 1730  
 To which all Grece stode vndre obeisaunce  
 And the statutes of þat myghty londe  
 Were establed by hys ordinaunce  
 But for to write þe onhappy chaunce  
 Of kynge Apis þat is remembred  
 He slayn was and pitevouslie dismembred  
 ¶ By hys brothyr callyd Tipheus  
 Somwhat of hatred but more for couetise  
 ffor Tipheus was Inlie desirus

**[7r, col. b]**

To reioyse in full mortall wyse 1740  
 The myghty kyngdome as he haue her devyse  
 Of Argyvoys to haue possession  
 Proffered by mordir and fals successioun  
 ¶ And when thys Isis founde hyr lorde so dede  
 Of intent þat he was magnifiede  
 ffyrste of wysdome she gan to take hede  
 Ordeigned a mene þat he were deifiede  
 And þat als he myght be stellifiede  
 In Egipte templis made hym to be stallid  
 And godde Serapus aftyr he was callyd 1750  
 ¶ What shall I write of the case horrible  
 Of Erisiton with hungre so constreynyd  
 That his lyf was to hymself odible  
 In Thesalie with ~~Indigence~~ <sup>indigence</sup> ~~fyned~~ <sup>pynynd</sup> 1754  
 When he shulde hys doughtyr in *seruage* 1756  
 Lyriope which was but yong of age  
 ¶ By chaunge of golde to purvey hym vitall  
 Of verrey nede he was so wobegon  
 He hadde nothyng þat myght hys thyrste availe 1760  
 Nor staunch hungre with ~~ge~~ gnawying on a bone  
 Wherfore he iete his membres Ichon  
 O folkys all was it not grete pite  
 To se hym dye in such aduersite

¶ We haue eke redde full many day befor  
Of grete banasshyng and *proscpcion*  
Of Argyvois hough kyng Glanor  
Was cruellie put from his region  
And his lieges of indignacion  
In his place þei set on Danus 1770

¶ The peple of malice did hym so encombre  
To increas hys sorowe and his aduersite  
And · 1 · doughtres also in noumbre  
And Egistus his brother eke ~~parde~~ pardie  
Hath · 1 · sunys · þe story ye may se  
Betwen þe which by surte of hande  
In mariage þer was made a bonde

¶ Vndre which compassid was treson  
Couertlie thought þei did s it hyde 1780  
But yf ye liste haue clere inspeccion  
Of this story e vpon euery syde  
Redith þe legendes of Martris of Cupide  
Which þat Chauncer in ordre as þei stode  
Compilyd of women þat were callid goode

¶ Touchyng the storie of kyng Pandion  
And of his goode doughttris tweine  
Hough Tereus fals of Condicion  
Them to deceyue did his bysy peine 1790  
They both namyde of beaute souereigne  
Goodlie Progne and yonge philomene  
Both Innocentes and of intent ful clene

¶ Their pitevous fate in open to expresse  
It were to me but a *presumpcion*  
Sith þat Chauncer did his bysynes  
In his legend as made his mencion  
Their Martirdom and þeir passion  
ffor to reherse þem he did his bysy peine  
As chefe poete callyd of Bretaigne

¶ Of goode women Chauncer a book did write 1800  
The noumbre incomplete fully of xix<sup>ten</sup> ·  
And þer the storie pleinlie dide indite  
Of Thereus Progne and Philomene  
Wher ye may se þeir legend þis I mene  
Doth them worship · *and* forth þeir lyf doth sh[ewe]

[7v, col. a]

ffor a clere meroure bycause þer be so fewe

¶ I wyll passe ouer and speke of them no more  
And vnto Cadmus forth my stile dresse

Yit in my wrytyng it grevith me sore  
 Touchyng of women of feith or stabilnes 1810  
 Blessid be godde I fynde non excesse  
 And for þer been so fewe as thynkith me  
 The goode shal be hadde in more deinte  
 ¶ This Tragedie berith yow witnes  
 Hough Saturnus by disposicion  
 Maliciuslie of his frowardnes  
 Causeth in Iuno full grete infeccion  
 He of nature conveyth þe venome doune  
 The aer infecte which may no man socoure  
 Comyth deth anon and all thyng doth devoure 1820  
 ¶ Tyme from Adam myn auctour doth expresse  
 Down to Nembroth by computacion  
 Hys stile conveyde by grete avisnes  
 ffrom ~~herastes~~ Zorastes touchyng Pharaon  
 Of ij · deluges he makith mencion in  
 Thesalie the vengeaunce gan labour  
 And in Achaia Thebes to devoure  
 ¶ Ye haue of heete herde þe grete excesse  
 Of princes · princesses full grete dissencion  
 Of Egistus the grete wrecchidnes 1830  
 The furie of Thereus the wo of Pandion  
 Of the ij · Sistres the confusion  
 And hough þeir fate be gan on them loure  
 Theire felicite vnwarlie to deuour  
 ¶ Princys · princesses youre ien doth vp dresse  
 I mene þe ien of youre discrecion  
 Seth of this worlde þe chaunge þe doublenes  
 The grete onsurenes the variacion  
 And aduertise for all youre hygh renoune  
 ffortunes dewys when þei must swetlie floure 1840  
 Then is she falsest youre glorie to devoure  
**De casu Iouis filij Saturni**  
**BE** rehersaile of many an olde poete  
 By descente þe line conveyed doune  
 Next Saturnus þe myghty kyng of Crete  
 Love was crownyd by succession  
 And next his heire by procreacion  
 Aftyr his fadyr þe londe to inherit  
 Reignyd in Crete as poetis liste to write  
 ¶ And of the linage as I yow tolde befor  
 Of the goddes moste souereigne and entiere 1850  
 Yit thof he was of bloode so hygh born  
 He chose Europa for to be hys fere  
 And doune descendid from his heuynlie spere

As he þat was for all his deite  
 Supprid in hert for all hys grete beaute  
 ¶ And she was doughter to þe myghty kyng  
 Callid Agenor by lineall descent  
 Whos myghty kyngdome and roiall fayre dwellyng  
 Was in Phenice towarde the oriente  
 And to Arabie his londe was adiacent 1860  
 fferre be south as ye may reede and se  
 Towarde þe parties of þe rede see ·  
 ¶ But Iubiter when he dide aduerte  
 Of Europa the grete semblenes  
 [H]ym thought he was woundid thurgh þe herte  
 [V]nto þe deth beholdyng hyr fayrnes  
 And for his constreinte and his mortall distres  
 [Sey]ng she was so fayre founde in his sight  
 [He] reuesshid hyr of verrey force and myght  
 ¶ [Bu]t Agenor hyr own fadir dere 1870  
 [Gan] in this case full pitevouslie compleine  
 [W]hen she alas moste goodlie and entiere  
 [Wa]s hym beraught which doubled all his peine ·

**[7v, col. b]**

Recure was noon thof he did his peine  
 Tyl he remembred in his regalie  
 Thof he wold send and espye  
 ¶ Hys sunne Cadmus hyr to recure agayn  
 ffor to serche hir in many a region  
 Towarde Grece with mych peine 1896?  
 Of Apollo for to desire a bone 1897?  
 Vnto what partie þat he myght hym drawe d[on] 1898?  
 Or þat he wolde gracioslie hym leede 1902  
 Vnto what Ile þat he myght hym spede 1901  
 ¶ He tok his shyppys by grete avisnes  
 And saylyd by many a straunge see  
 Did his labour and his bysynes  
 With many a worthy þat with hym pryve  
 But when þat he of reso[n] did see  
 þer was no mene for such as he was sent  
 ffor to accomplissh þe fyne of his intent 1890  
 ¶ With gladde herte devoide of all grugyng  
 Seyng þe case frowarde and contrarie 1892  
 And of manhoode liste not hym self dispair[e] 1894  
 ¶ Humble of his toke his exilyng 1893  
 But with his meny knightlie gan repaire 1895  
 Towarde Grece and proudlie þer to londe  
 Of Apollo for vndrestonde



¶ To what partie þat he myght drawe  
He prayed þe godde to vysen hym or rede  
Summe tokyn shewe or summe maner lawe 1900  
Vnto what Ile þat he myght hym spede 1901  
Wher as he myght ~~bed~~ belde a Cite 1903  
That were acordyng for hym and his meny  
Or þat he wolde *graciuslie* hym leede 1902  
¶ And to Apollo he didde sacrificise 1905  
And made to hym his oblacion  
In the Temple of Delpho in this wyse 1914?  
And þis was his answeire in conclusion 1919  
To go and serche cuntres environ 1921  
A bolle þat were excellyng of fayrnes 1923  
Which in yokke hadde neuer doon no bysynes 1922  
¶ And wher þat euer sekyng þat he founde 1926  
A Bulle stoud still in hys pasture  
Apollo badde vpon þe same londe  
Wher as he saught þis sight of aventure ·  
That he should doon hys bysy cure 1930  
To belde a city and his folkys all  
And ~~Boea~~ Boecia aftyr þe Bulle call  
¶ And when þat Cadmus þe precepte vndirstode  
An in serchyng did his ~~bysy cure~~ bysynes  
He founde a place where a Bulle stoode  
ffedyng hymself which as by lyknes  
Was a place ful plesaunt of largenes  
Wher as he stynte and gan a Cite reyse  
Which þat poetis gretlie commend and preyse  
¶ And þat hys beldyng myght þe more availe 1940  
All þe forens þat did abought hym dwelle  
fful lyke a knyght by force and by bataile  
Oute of þat cuntre he did þem expell  
Reysyng a Cite which þat did excell  
And as Ouide recordith eke þe same  
In to þis day Thebes berith þe name  
¶ And ho was not oonlie glorified  
ffor reryng vp of þis Cite  
But he was also gretlie magnified  
ffor his manhoode and magnanymite 1950  
And moste commendid yf ye liste to se  
ffor the surmountyng famus excellence  
Which þat he hadde in wysdome and science  
¶ ffor as myn Auctour of hym liste indite  
Thurgh his noble prudent purviaunce  
He taught figures and *lettres* for to write  
And made lawes of full grete ordinaunce

[8r, col. a]

Amonge þe Grekes and set governaunce  
Ther vicius lyfe by vertu to restreine  
And who outerayed · was punysshed with peine 1960  
¶ And of intente to increce his linage  
And his Cite also Thebes to multiplie  
[H]e toke a wyfe þat yong was of age  
And she was callid as bookys specifie  
Ermyon and touchyng hir allie  
Thof þat she wer born of roiall bloode  
She was also both inlie fayre and goode ·  
¶ And þis was doon as writyth myn auctour  
Aftyr þe deth of worthie Iosue  
[Go]thonyel beyng [h]is successoure 1970  
[Ha]uyng þe ledyng and þe souereignete  
[O]f Israel whan Thebes þe Cite  
[W]as foundid fyrste in þe dayes olde  
[By] Kyng Cadmus befor as I yow tolde  
¶ [ffoure] doughtyrs he hadde by hys lyve  
[ffu]l fayre ylkon and goodlie on to see  
And þeire names to reherse blyve  
Semele was oldiste and next Autonode  
The thyrde in ordre was callid Inoe  
And Agave was yongest of them all 1980  
Of which doughtres þus it is befall  
¶ They were ilkon of porte and of maner  
ffull well fauourde in euery mannys sighte  
Ryghte womanlie and hevenlie of þeir chere  
And for þeire beaute þeire fadir anon right  
As it was fittyng with all his ful myght  
Lyke þeire estates þeire byrth *and* eke þeire age  
Made them be weddyd and ioynyed in mariage  
¶ To worthy *princis* his linage to avaunce  
And þis incresid by procreacion 1990  
Wherof þe kyng hadde ful grete plesaunce  
And grete reioysyng in his opinion  
To see his line by generacion  
With his Neveus and Cosyns of allie  
ffro day to day to wex and multiplie  
¶ And þis encresid his felicite  
When he considyrd verrelie in dede  
The riche beldyng of his roiall Cite  
And hough fortune dide his brydyll lede  
To grete riches in bookys as I ~~fyn~~de rede 2000  
And to grete nobles hauyng residence

In his cite of moste magnificence

¶ His doughtre Semele recorde of myn Auctour

Thof she descendid were of þe bloode roiall

To Iubiter she was paramoure

And by his power above celestiall

She conseyvid in especiall

As poetis liste of hyr to indite

Hym þat is godde of grapys rede and white

¶ Callid Bachus which hath þe gouernaunce

2010

Of wynys all and all þe hoole ^the^ regallie

Wherof þeraftyр fel a ful grete vengeance

ffor when Iuno did fyrste espie

Of Iubiter þe grete Avoutrie

Of grete hatrede and Enviуs desyre

He made Semele be brent with soden fyre

¶ By descendyng of a soden leven

Wherthурh his place was into askys brent

The onware stroke cam doune from þe heуyn

2020

And on Semele þe vengeance is down went

And or þe flame consumyd was and spent

Ther was of hyr left no remembraunce

[8r, col. b]

But of hyr ende þe woful mortall chaunce

¶ Also Acteon þe son of Actonoe

To grete myschefe and infortune born

Whos fadir callid was Eristee

Com of þe kynred þat I yow tolde beforн

With cruell houndys alas he was to torne

ffor þat he sawe as bookys of hym tell

Diane naked bathe hyr in a welle ·

2030

¶ And as poetis remembre at þe leste ·

When þe ladies of Thebes the cite

Helde of Bachus solempnelie þe feste

The yongest Sistre callid Agave

Doughter to Cadmus alas it was pite

Agayн hyr own son dere

She wex so woode and mortall of hyr chere

¶ Mordrying hym in full cruell wyse

In hyr rage she was so furius

ffor he laughyd at þe Sacrifice

2040

In Thebes don of women to Bachus

The which son was callyd Pantheus

Whome þat she slough with a ful sharp darte

In hir wodnes as she hym founde aparte ·

2044

¶ And amonge Cadmus sorowes euerychon

2073

To rehers pleinlie as it was  
 I dare afferme hough þat þer was on  
 Moste horribill and most dredeful in such case  
 ffor Cadmus son callid Adamas  
 Hys son in lawe thurgh fals melancolie  
 ffell soudenlie into a frenesie  
 ¶ Of whome þe wyf was callyd Inoe 2080  
 Cadmus doughter as ye haue herde expresse  
 Which thurgh þe constreinte of hys infirmite  
 In hys rage and furius wodnes  
 Thought þat hys wyf was a lionesse  
 And his wylde imaginacions  
 Thought his · ij · Chyldyrn were also · ij · lones  
 ¶ And vpon them full lowde he gan to crye  
 Toward hys wyf in haste he ranne anon  
 And from hyr armes þer was no remedie  
 The chylde he hent · and on a Craggie stone 2090  
 He gan to braste it and breke it euery bone  
 The which chyld Bochas writyth þus  
 ffull tendir and yong was callid Leuchus  
 ¶ And of þis woofull soden aventure  
 Of hys rage whan she toke heede  
 As moste soryfull of any creature  
 Hyr othir chylde anon she hent for drede ·  
 ffor of socoure she knewe no bettyr speede  
 Sone as she myght gon haste ought of his syght  
 But welaway as she toke hyr to flyght 2100  
 ¶ And hyr husbond came aftyr pursuyng  
 Lyke a woode lion in hys cruelte  
 Down from a mounten which was dependyng  
 She and hyr chylde fell into þe see  
 Was it not ruth · was it not pite  
 A kynges doughter hyr lorde in Thebes crownyd  
 He to be woode · and she for ferde so drownyd 2107  
 ¶ The grete myscheve fell in the lyne 2045  
 Of kyng Cadmus þurgh his onhappy chaunce  
 ffortune his so nobles gan to vndirmynte vnd[irmyne]  
 And thought she wolde hys glorie disa[uaunce]  
 All worldlie gladnes is medlith with grev[aunce]  
 Experience of Cadmus · ye may se · 2050  
 So importable was his aduersite ·

[8v, col. a]

¶ ffor while he sat most hyghest in his glorie  
 No parte eclipsyd of his prosperite  
 Hys bright renoun and his riall memorie

In Realmes spredde and many a ferre cuntre  
 And he moste wylfull in hys hygh see  
 Sat with hys linage moste hygh in his nobles  
 Then cam fortune þe fals enchaunteresse  
 ¶ Of wylfulness · and fonde occasion  
 Agayn þis Cadmus and made his renoun dull 2060  
 Of his kynred by fals collusion  
 She gan away the bryghtist feddyrs pull  
 And when his shynyng was wex vp to þe full  
 Aftyr the chaunge of fortunes lawe  
 Hys glorie gan withcrese and withdrawe  
 ¶ It was more grevous to hys dignite ·  
 A soden fall from his high nobles  
 Then yf he neuer hadde be  
 Set in þe astate · of so grete worthynes  
 ffor the furius mortall hevynes 2070  
 Of hys kynred withoutyn eny more  
 Wolde haue grevyd a pore man ful sore 2072  
 ¶ Lo here the ende of Cadmus euery dele 2108  
 Hys chyldren slayn and hys allyes all  
 And he hymself from fortunes whele 2110  
 When he leste wenyd · ful sodenlie is fall  
 Hys litill sugre tempyrd with mykyll gall  
 ffor amonge all his mortall peynes  
 This liegemen of Thebe Citesyns  
 ¶ Made agayn hym a conspiracion  
 Put hym in Exile and his wyf also  
 Hys sonnes his doughtres brought to destruccion  
 And to þe newe reysyng of his mortall wo  
 He and his wyfe compellid both two  
 ffor werray pouerte and verrey indigence 2120  
 In þeir laste age to purchas þeire dispence 2121  
 ¶ But þe goddys of mercy and of pite 2143  
 When þei them sawe by fortune so cast down  
 ffrom þeire estates into grete pouerte  
 Hauyng of þem ful grete compassion  
 They made of them a transformacion  
 Of both tweine þem yevyng a liknes  
 Of Serpentes to lyve in wyldyrnes 2149  
 ¶ Thus of Cadmus þe sorowes to descriue 2122  
 And his myschef to put in remembraunce  
 He banysshid was twys by hys lyue  
 ffyrst by his fadyrs cruell ordinaunce  
 Of his Sistre to make inguraunce  
 And aldirlast of ^in^ his onweldie age  
 He was compellid to holde his passage

¶ Oute of Thebes his wyf and he allon  
 In sorowe and wepyng to complish vp þer dayes 2130  
 Into Illiry togyddyr be þei goone  
 Theyr pacience put at full assayes  
 Whos bittyrnes felt not allayes  
 Eke þ of þeire ende nor þeire onhappy fate  
 Nor of þeire deth I fynde noon oþer fate ·  
 ¶ Saue þat Ouide makith mencion  
 And Iohn Bochas þe poet excellent  
 Seith þat ij · brethyrn · Zeto and Amphion  
 Oute of Thebes both by on assent  
 Haue Cadmus into exile sent 2140  
 His wyf also aftyr þeire high nobles  
 To ende þeire lyf in sorow and wrecchidnes 2142  
 ¶ O what astate may hymself assure 2150  
 ffor to conserue his lyf in sicurnes  
 What worldlie ioy may here longe indure ·

**[8v, col. b]**

Or where shall men now fynde stable  
 Sith kinges princis from þeir high nobles  
 Recorde of Cadmus be sodenlie brouht lowe  
 And frome the whele of fortune ouerthrowe  
 ¶ Who may susteine the pitevus auenture  
 Of this Tragedie by wrytyng expresse  
 Is it not lyke vnto the chauntuplure  
 Begynnyng with ioye endyng w in wrec[chidnes] 2160  
 All worldlie blys is meint with bittirn[es]  
 The soden chaunge þerof may no man knowe  
 ffor who sitte highest is sonest ouerthrowe  
 ¶ Was in this worlde yit neuer creature  
 Rekyn vp princis for all þeir grete hig[h nobles]  
 ffortune couth reclyne them to hir lure  
 And them inpersch thurgh hyr frowardn[es]  
 Wherfor ye lordys with all your grete ric[hes]  
 Beth ware affore or ye daunce on the [rowe]  
 Suche as fortune from hyr whole th[ Rowe] 2170  
**De casu Oetis Regis Colchos ciuit[atis]**  
**When Iohn Bochas was most diligen[t]**  
 To considre þe successiones  
 Of linage with all hys intende  
 In his wrytyng and descripcions  
 To compile ^the^ generaciones  
 Of many noble famus of estate  
 I mene of such os were infortunate  
 ¶ In his serchyng he founde not oute a fewe

That were vnhappy founde in their lyvyng  
 To his presentence anon þer gan hym shewe 2180  
 A multitude full pitevouslie wepyng  
 Amonge which full doolfull pleynyng  
 Cam fyrst Oetes and hath his pleint begunne  
 Kyng of Colchos and ~~some~~ ^son^ vnto þe Sunne  
 ¶ffor of phebus which is so fresh and clere  
 Poetis write þat he is son and heyre  
 Because he was so myghty of powere  
 So fresh so lusty manlie and right fayre  
 But of fortune he fell in grete dispayre  
 Cursyng his fate and his destynye 2190  
 Whan Iason firste entred his cuntre  
 ¶By pelleus sent from Thesalie  
 Ther for to complissh by diligent labour  
 The grete emprises thurgh hys cheualrie  
 Yf godde and fortune liste to don hym fauour  
 That he myght wyne the tresoure  
 That is to mene þat he were so bolde  
 The ~~rome~~ ^Ramme^ to assaile þat bare þe fles of golde  
 ¶This said Iason thurgh þe counsell of Mede  
 By sorcery and incarnation 2200  
 The Bullys sought horrible for to se  
 And venquissed the venemus dragon  
 The kyng dispoiled of his possession  
 Accomplished with ~~dragons~~ carectes and figures  
 Of Colchos þe dredfull adventures  
 ¶And afyrwarde when he his purpos hadde  
 He lefte Oetis in full grete dispeire  
 And Medea forth with hym he ledde  
 And hir broþer which was þe kynges heire  
 But os I fynde hough in hys repayre 2210  
 Oute of Colchos when þei can remeve  
 Kyng Oetis aftyr them can sewe  
 ¶Vpon Iason avengid for to be  
 Withoute taryying he solued prowldie

**[9r, col. a]**

[T]he which thyng when Iason did se  
 [T]his Medea can shape a remedie  
 [S]he toke hyr broþer and slough cruellie  
 [A]nd hym dismembred as bokys make mynde  
 [An]d Pecemel she caste in a felde behynde  
 ¶[S]he gan hym caste all besprent with bloode 2220  
 [W]hereof hyr fadre when he had a sight  
 [fful] pale of chere stille in the felde he stode

[Wh]ile she and Iason to þem vnto flight  
 [I tr]owe þat tyme þe moste woful wyght  
 [That] was alyve when he did knowe  
 [Hys] chylde dismembred and abroad sowe  
 [¶Whi]ch cause was alas and welaway  
 [Tha]t he so stinte as man disconsolate  
 [While] þat Iason fro Colchos went away  
 [And M]edeia moste infortunate 2230  
 [Was] grounde and rote of þis mortall debate  
 [ffor who] sawe euer or redde of such an oþer  
 [To sa]ue a straunger *and* liste to sle hyr broþer  
 [¶ffor]sake hyr fadir hyr cuntre and kynred  
 [T]he londe enporisshed thurgh hyr robberie  
 Of hyr worship she toke non othir hede  
 Loue had hir brought in such a fantasie  
 And while þat she bode in Thesalie  
 And with Iason did þer sojourne  
 She made Esan to youth to retourne · 2240  
 ¶A yerde she toke þat was drye and olde  
 And hir herbes and *commixtions*  
 She made it boile in Ouide it is tolde  
 And by carectes and incantacions  
 And with crafte of hir *coniuracions*  
 The yerde began to budde and blossom newe  
 And to bere frute and levys fresh of hue  
 ¶And sembleable with hir confeccions  
 Hys olde humeus she hath depurid clene  
 And with hyr lusty fresh pocions 2250  
 Hys emptie skynne tremblyng *and* right lene  
 Pale and wanne þat no bloode was sene ·  
 But as it was a dedelie creature  
 All this hath she transformyd by nature  
 ¶Made hym lusty and fresh of his corage  
 Gladde of hert ~~h~~ lovelie of chere *and* sight  
 Ryght well hewyd and clere of hys visage  
 Wondir deliuer both of force and myght  
 In all his membres and weldy and as lyght  
 As euer he was and in the same astate 2260  
 By crafte of Mede he was so alleuate  
 ¶Aftyr all þis agayn kyng Pelleus  
 She gan maligne vncle vnto Iason  
 And of Envie she procedith þus  
 The kinges doughtres she drowe to hyr anon  
 Them counselling þat þei shuld gon  
 Vnto þeire fadir *and* playnly to them sayn  
 Yf he desyred to be yong agayn



¶ffull restorid his force to recure  
And þerwithall in lusty age floure 2270  
She behight to do hyr besy cure  
Lyk his desire to helpe and socoure  
And þis matier so craftilie laboure  
ffinallie stonde in the same case  
To be made yonge as hir broþer was  
¶Touchyng such thyng for more evidence  
This Medea hath to the doughtres tolde  
Of intente to yeve more credence

**[9r, col. b]**

She bad hym take a Ramme þat was right olde  
And with a knyf for to be so bolde 2280  
To sle þis beste afor them þer he stode  
And in a vesell drawe oute his olde bloode  
¶fffully affermyng lyke as it wer true  
That he should be a lambe agayne  
ffor she by crafte wolde his blode renewe  
In such wyse by euydencez playn  
þat of olde tokyn shuld be seyn  
In all his membres as lusty and intiere  
As was a lambe eyued of o yere  
¶And here vpon in full sleightly wyse 2290  
She began a processe of full fals treson  
The sistres made vpon þat lambe practise  
Drewe oute his bloode lyke hir intencion  
And she by crafte of fals illusion  
Blent hyr ien by apparence in veine  
The olde Ramme to seme a lambe agayn  
¶Thus Medea by sleight compassyng  
Of Envie and venemus hatrede  
Excited hath þe sistrez in werkyng  
Agayn þeir fadir mortallie procede 2300  
With sharpe knyvvys þei made þeir fadir blede  
In myddys of þe hert thurghoute euery veine  
Supposyng þe sely sistres tweine  
¶That Pelleus renued shuld be  
To youth agayn as force and of substaunce  
But finallie by treson of Mede  
He loste his lyfe such was his woful chaunce  
ffor she it wrought onlie of vengeaunce  
As rote and grounde of þis cruell dede  
Againe þe nature of all womanhede 2310  
¶Supposyng in hir opinion  
Hough þat þe deth gretly shuld plese

Of Peleus vnto hir lorde Iason  
 Thurgh grete increce set his hert at ese  
 But it reboundid vnto hir dise  
 Pat finallie Iason hir forsooke  
 ffor hir offence and he his wey toke  
 ¶ Into Corinthe toward þe kyng Creon  
 Whos doughtre Creusa for hir grete beaute  
 Was aftyr weddyd vnto Iason 2320  
 But when þis weddyng was knowen to Mede  
 Caste she wolde þervpon avengid be  
 Began to conspire of malice and Envie  
 And þurgh hir magyk and hir sorcorie  
 ¶ In a full grete haste gan ordeigne  
 A lityl cofyr oonlie of intende  
 And by hir fayre yonge sonnes tweine  
 With oper Iewels she hath þe cofyr sent  
 Vnto Creusa makyng a present  
 Which of malice she liste so dispose 2330  
 Pat when Creusa þe cofir did uncloze  
 ¶ The fyre braste oute a ful large space  
 And brent Creusa by a ful grete violence  
 Set on fyre pleyndlie all þe place  
 By inchauntement þer was no resistance  
 All went on fyre þat was in hir presence  
 The vengeaunce did full grete damage  
 But when Iason þe fyre sawe in his rage  
 ¶ And considred þe malice of Mede 2339  
 Withoute routh or womanlie pite 2346  
 She falsly mordred þe chyldren þat she bar[e]

**[9v, col. a]**

Lyke a steppemodre avengid for to be  
 Lut þeire throtys or þei were ware or se 2349  
 But for hatred she hadde vnto Iason 2351  
 Aftyr þis mordre she fledde away anon  
 ¶ So escapyng his indignacion  
 By crafte of magyk she went at liberte  
 To Athens in þat Region  
 She weddyd was into the kyng Egee  
 Not longe aftyr a son by hym hadde she  
 þe which Child myn auctour telleth þus  
 Aftyr Medea callid was ~~Mededus~~ Medus  
 ¶ Aftyr whos name þe famus Region 2360  
 Namyd was which callid is mede  
 But folowyng ay hyr olde condicion  
 This Medea voide of fame and drede

Compassid hath of wylful fals hatrede  
 þat Theseus þe son of kynge Egee  
 With newe poyson shall devourid be  
 ¶ But Theseus ful like a manlie knyght  
 In repeyryng home to his cuntre  
 Of high prudence espyed anon right  
 þe mortall vengeance þe grete cruelte 2370  
 Of his Stepmodir the which of Enmite  
 Concludid hath hir intencion  
 Hym to destrue vnwarlie with poyson  
 ¶ Hyr hert of malice cruell and horribil  
 As she þat was with treson euer alliede  
 When þat she sawe hir purpose moste odibil  
 By kyng Egeus fully was espyed  
 She hath hyr hert and wittys now applied  
 As in þis boke poetis haue compiled  
 Agayn to Iason restorid to be and reconsilid 2380  
 ¶ She fledde away for fere of Theseus  
 Leste þat he hadde don om̃ hir vengeance  
 And finalli as writeth Ouidius  
 And morall Senec concludith in substaunce  
 In his Tragedies makying remembraunce  
 Hough Medea lyke as poetis seyn  
 Vnto Iason restorid was agayn  
 ¶ Touchyng the ende saue fulfillyng hir purpos 2388/2395  
 Myn auctour tellith þat Iason and Medee 2396  
 Reuokyd haue agayn vnto ~~K~~ Colchos  
 His fadre Oetis and from his pouerte  
 Brought hym agayn vnto his roiall see  
 And to his crown by force þei did hym restore 2400  
 Touchyng his ende of hym I fynde no more  
 ¶ This his fortune hath turnyd to and fro  
 ffyrste lyke a kyng hauyng ful grete riches  
 Aftyr lyvyng in pouerte and in wo  
 [S]ithen restorid to his worthines  
 Thus ay is sorow meddylde with gladnes  
 Who can aduerte in all worldlie thyng  
 Recorde of Minos þe noble worthi kyng  
**De casu Minois Regis Crete**  
 TO whom I muste nowe my stile dresse  
 ffolowyng þe traces of Bocacius 2410  
 The which Minos Bochas doth expresse  
 Touchyng his birth he writith pleylnlie þus  
 That he was manlie wyse and vertuus  
 Son by descent of Iubiter þe grete  
 And Europa born to be eyre in Crete

¶ And of his person wondir delectable  
fful renomid of wisdom and science  
By diuerse titles of laude commendable  
Of byrth of bloode of knyghthode *and* prudens

[9v, col. b]

ffor by his studie and entier diligence 2420  
He founde fyrste lawes groundid on reson  
Whereby Crete þe famus region

¶ Governde was and set in stabilnes  
All Iniuries and wronge to reforme  
Made statutes extorcions to repress  
Of righthuesnes þei toke þeir fryste forme  
And þat iche man shuld hymself conforme  
Lyke þe degres subiecte and souereigne  
þat no man had matier to complayn

¶ He made his lieges to ligge in quiete 2430  
Clere shynyng in his roiall nobles  
With swerde and spere sittynge in his se[e]  
And while he floured in his worthines  
He toke a wyfe of excellent fayrnes  
Doughter to phebus in Bochas ye may [se]  
And she was callid fayre Paciphe

¶ And And hir fadre by record of writyng  
In his tyme was holdyn ful famus  
Of þe Ile of Rodys he was lorde and kyng  
And his dayes of porte ful glorius 2440  
Ryght proude in armys and victorius  
Takyng witnes of Methamorphosios  
Hys doughter hadde · iij · children by Minos

¶ The fyrste a son callid Mandroge  
And aftyrwarde full fayre doughtres tweyne  
Ryght womanlie and goodlie on to se  
But as fortune for them did ordeigne  
They fest þeire liue with trouble *and* grete peyne  
Callid Adriana *and* Phedra was þat oþer  
ffolowyng þeir fate his myght be noon oþer 2450

¶ Androgeus by kyng Minos was sent  
ffor he shuld profit in clergy  
To Athens of vertuus intent  
Ther to studie in Philosophie  
And for he began to ~~treson~~ ^increse^ and multiplie  
And passe all oþer by studie in lernyng  
And to excell his felowys in connyng  
¶ They of Envie and fals malice alas  
Made agayn hym a conspiracion

And from a pynnacle sacred to Pallas 2460  
 Of full grete hight · þei made hym tomble doun  
 ffor which iniurie Bochas makith mencion  
 His fadir Minos avengid for to be  
 Leyde a grete powere abought þe cite  
 ¶He caste hym fully þat no man shuld hym lete  
 But þat he wolde do cruellie vengeaunce  
 [A]nd rownde aboute so sore he hem besette  
 With men of armes and with his ordinaunce  
 þat finallie he broughte þem to outraunce 2470  
 And he constreyned within a litle space  
 Theire lyf þeire deth submitted to his *grace*  
 ¶But while þei made agayn hym resistance  
 Supposyng his power to withstonde  
 Nisus þat was kyng of Magarence  
 Agayn Minos þo þeire party tok on hande  
 And oft tymes as ye shal vndrestonde  
 When kyng Minos þe Cite did assaile  
 Nisus within with myghty apparaile  
 ¶Vpon þe walle stode in his defens  
 When þat Minos ful lyk a manly knyght 2480

**[10r, col. a]**

[ffa]ught without with sturdie violence  
 [Li]k Mars hymself in stele armyd bright  
 [W]herof when Scilla ones had a sight  
 [Do]ughte to Nisus aduertyng his prowes  
 [An]on for loue she fell in grete destres  
 ¶[She] was supprised with his high nobles ·  
 [Hys] manlie force *experte* manyfolde  
 [Se]t Scilla in grete hevynes  
 [ffor] loue of Minos in poetis it is tolde  
 [Ma]de hir hert *presumen* and be bolde 2490  
 [ffir]ste himself to put in parti  
 [Hir] fadyrs lyfe · þe cite þe clergie  
 ¶[For] loue hath set hir hert osyde  
 [Aga]yn nature hir blode and hir kynred  
 [And] all frenship fro hir she gan devide  
 [And] of hir worship she toke no *maner* hede  
 [Loue] made hir cruell agayn all womanhede  
 [ffirst]e hir herte <sup>^so^</sup> sore set afyre  
 [Hir] fadyrs deth falslie to conspire  
 ¶[ffor] kyng Minos beyng a *straunger* 2500  
 [Was s]o imprintid in hir opinion  
 [Of c]reatures þer stode non so nere  
 An[d] for his sake by ful fals treson

She compassid the destruccion  
 ffyrste of hir fadre and of þe cite  
 So straunge a thyng alas hough myght it be  
 ¶ That a woman of yerys yong and tendir  
 Couthe ymagin so *mervelus* a thyng  
 But oft it fallith þat creatures s<sup>t</sup> sclendir  
 Vndir a face of Angelik lokyng 2510  
 Ben verrey ~~wolves~~ wolues outeward in wyrkyng  
 Eke vndir coloure of porte femynyne  
 Som be founde verrey serpentine  
 ¶ Lambes in shewyng shadewyd with meknes  
 Cruell as Tygyrs who doth þem offence  
 Of humble chere *pretendyng* a lyknes  
 But o <sup>t</sup> alas what harme doth apparens  
 What damage doth countrefet Innocence  
 Vndir a mantell shrowdid of womanhed  
 When feynyð falsnes doth þeir bridil lede 2520  
 ¶ ffor this Scilla þe kynges doughter dere  
 In whome he set his hoole affeccion  
 His hertys ioy his plesaunce most intiere  
 His worldlie blys *and* his consolacion  
 But she all turnyd to his confusion  
 Not lyke a doughter but lyke a sorceresse  
 His deth compassid þe story bereth witnes  
 ¶ Hir fadir had a fatall heere þat shone  
 Brghter þen golde in which he did assure  
 Manlie to fight agayn his mortall fone 2530  
 ffor on his heede while it did indure  
 He shuld venquyssh by manhode *and* recure  
 And thurgh his knyghthode to his increas *and* glorie  
 In euery querele wyne þe victorie  
 ¶ But when king Nisus hir fadir lay aslepe  
 Vpon a nyght a parcell afforn þe day  
 ffull priuelie or he toke kepe  
 The here of golde þis Scilla kut away  
 And vnto Minos armyd þer he lay  
 She hym presentid thurgh hir ordinaunce 2540  
 Of fals intent hym for to do plesaunce  
 ¶ But in þis matier lyke as write Ouide  
 Methamorphosios who so taketh hede  
 Hir fadir slepyng she knelyng by hys side

**[10r, col. b]**

Toke a sharpe knyfe withoute fere or drede  
 While he lay nakyd she kerue ~~ow~~ ^on^ twoo his hede  
 Stale hir way of full fals intende

And to kyng Minos þe hede she doth *present* ·  
 ¶ And in hir *commyng* to hys *presence*  
 Hir fadirs hede when she afforn hym leyde 2550  
 Nothyng asshamyd of hir grete offence  
 Vnto Minos þus she did abrayde  
 And with bolde chere eyn þus she sayde  
 My lorde *quod* she with supporte of youre grace  
 Yevith to my tale leyser tyme and space ·  
 ¶ Certys my lorde loue hath excetid me  
 And constreynyd to this cruel dede  
 To sle my fadir · destrue my Cite  
 ffor to gete me worship forsake womanhede  
 And made me hardy to make my fadir blede 2560  
 Thyng horrible þus I haue vndirtake  
 ffor to accomplissh onlie for youre sake  
 ¶ Myself disheretid for loue of *your persone*  
 Callid in my cuntre a fals traitoress  
 Disconsolate stale away allon  
 Of new defamid and namyd a maistres  
 Of fals mordre ~~of fals~~ I bryng a grete witnes  
 My fadirs heede and his dedlie visage  
 Agayn nature to forthir youre viage  
 ¶ Wherfor I pray þat ye liste aduertise 2570  
 And considir lyke a gentil knyght  
 Hough I for loue towarde *your* grete emprise  
 Vnto grete forthering also of right  
 Haue fyrste my fadir *depryuyd* of his myght  
 Refte hym his lyfe despoiled his riches  
 To do plesaunce to youre high nobles  
 ¶ And nothyng aske to my guerdon  
 Nor to my rewarde þat myght me availe  
 But þat I myght haue full possession 2580  
 Of youre person moste worthie in bataile  
 ffor þer is no tresoure þat may *countervaille*  
 To my desire as þat ye wolde in dede  
 Goodelie accepte me and my maydynhede  
 ¶ Ye may me saue and spyll with a worde  
 Make me moste gladde moste dolorous  
 I not require of yow my *souereigne* lorde  
 But þat ye wolde be to me gracios  
 ffor bloode and kynne and my fadirs hous  
 All I lefte behynde yf ye liste aduerte 2590  
 And vndepartid yeve me youre herte  
 ¶ Which to youre hignes ought not suffice  
 All þing considred in youre roiall estate  
 Conceyveth also in hough vncouth wyse

ffor youre love I stond desolate  
 Saue of youre mercy fully disconsolate  
 Here is all and *summe* youre love I by so sore  
 But yf ye do grace I can sey to yow no more  
 ¶ And when she had hir tale tolde knelyng  
 With a *maner* pretens of womanhede  
 Of all hir treson a pointe not conceling 2600  
 The kyng astodied of hyr horrible dede  
 By grete advise peysyd and take hede  
 It was not fittyng to prince nor kyng  
 To do *fauour* to so frowarde a thyng  
 ¶ With trouble hert and a face pale  
 His looke vpcaste and saide godde forbed  
 That *euer* in cronicle in storie or in tale  
 That eny man shuld of Minos [r]ede

[10v, col. a]

Hough he supportid so venemus a dede  
 ffavour a woman alas and weleaway 2610  
 Which slough hir fadir when in bedde lay  
 ¶ But for youre hatefull and vnkynd rage  
 I pray þe goddes ichon and Saturne  
 To take vengeaunce on *your* fals outerage  
 ffor *euer* wher as ye soiourne  
 þat al thyng may agayn yow turne  
 Londe and see shortlie to expresse  
 þei ben infecte with youre cursidnes  
 ¶ Your own mouth youre outrage doth accuse  
 And youre actez ben so abhominable 2620  
 That youre gyftys I fully do refuse  
 Thei be so frowarde and so repreueable  
 That youre *persone* vengeable and vnstable  
 Within my courte it were a thyng not fayre  
 That ye shuld abide or haue repaire  
 ¶ Ye ben so hatefull vpon euery syde  
 And contraius of condicion  
 I pray Tellus which of þe erth is guyde  
 And to Neptunus I make þis orison  
 As ferre as strecchith þe dominacion 2630  
 Vndre þe boundes of þe regallie  
 And duellyng place þat þei to yow denie  
 ¶ When Minos hadde his answeþ þus devysed  
 On reason groundid and of equite  
 And Scilla sawe hough she was despiside  
 Knewe no partie passage nor cuntre  
 To fynde socour whidir she myght fle



But dispeired as a Traytoresse  
 Towarde þe see anon she gan hir dresse  
 ¶ To entre þe water pleinlie yf she myght 2640  
 ffor verrey shame hyrself for to shrowde  
 And when þe goddys þerof had a sight  
 They turnyd hir as þei myght or coude  
 Into a quayle for to syng lowde  
 Hir fadir Nisus also þei did transmue  
 Into a sperhauke þe quaile to pursu  
 ¶ This was þe ende of Nisus and of Scilla  
 And aftyrwarde of Athens þe town  
 Was yoldin vp to standen at wyll 2650  
 Of kyng Minos withoute condicion  
 Euery thirde yeere by reuolucion  
 They of the cite shulde not delay  
 ix · of þeir children a tribute for to pay  
 ¶ This was of Minos þe Imposicion  
 Vpon Athens and of verrey drede  
 Thei obeied as made is mencion  
 And þeir children yere by yere þei did lede  
 Into Crete þe Minotaure to fede  
 Vnto þis monstre ordeigned for repaste  
 Which at þeir commyng deuoured wer in haste 2660  
 ¶ But or I ferther do procede  
 In this matier I wyl do my cure  
 To declare yf ye liste take hede  
 Of þis monstre to telle þe engendir  
 Vncouth to here and agayn nature  
 ffor by þe writyng of Ouidius  
 This outhlie beste was engendird þus  
 ¶ Methamorphoseos þe maner ye may se  
 Mynos hadde a þ Bull of grete fayrnes  
 Whyte as mylke and þe quene Paciphe 2670  
 Lovid hym so hote þe storie berith witnes  
 And Dedalus did his besynes  
 [B]y subtile crafte *and* made his gynnys so ·

**[10v, col. b]**

That agayn kynde with hir he hadde to do  
 ¶ And conceived a beste montruus  
 þat was departid half Bull and half man  
 And as poetis by wrytyng techith vs  
 Of Minotaurus þus the name began  
 And Dedalus not long aftyr · when  
 This monstre was by þe quene forth broug[ht] 2680  
 This subtile werkman hath an hous wroug[ht]

¶ Callid laborintus diuerse and vncouth  
ffull of wryncelis and of straungnes  
Outhlie to knowe which is northe or south  
Or to what partie a man shulde hym dress[e]  
ffolkis wer þer blint with furius derknes  
Who þat entred his t̃ returne was in vein[e]  
Withoute a clewe for to resorte ageyn  
¶ Of Minotaurus þis was þe habitacle  
Lyk a prison made for turmentrie 2690  
ffor dampnyd folk a peyneful tabernacle  
ffor all þat lay þerin in partie  
The Monstre ~~moste~~ muste deuour þem and de[fi]e  
And specially was ordeigned þis turment  
ffor all þat were down from Athens sent  
¶ But in þis matier summe bookys varie  
And afferme hough quene Paciphe  
Of kynge Minos louyd a secretarie  
Callyd Taurus in Bochas ye may se  
And þus þe kyng for all his royalte 2700  
Decevyd was · for who may eny while  
Hymself preserue wher women list begyle  
¶ ffor by this Taurus Bochas berith witnes  
Quene Pacife hadde a childe ful fayre  
Mynos not knowyng by no liknes  
But þat þe child was born to be his heire  
His truste was goode he fell in no dispaire  
ffor summe husbondes as poetis haue compilid  
Which moste truste in them · ar sonyst begylyd  
¶ Innocentes can not deme amys 2710  
Namelie of wyues þat be founde true  
Clerkys may write but doutles þus it is  
Of þeir nature þei loue no thyng new  
Stedfast of hert þei chaunge not þer hew  
Haukys best preuid somwhile a chek make  
Yit for a fawt þe foule is not forsake  
¶ Of þis matier write I wyl no more  
But ay þe tribute and seruage of þe town  
Procedith forth þei constreynyd were so sore  
Lyke as þeir lot turnyd vp ^and^ s̃ down 2720  
ffor þer was made non excepcion  
Of high ne lowe · nor soure nor swete  
¶ But as it fell þei were sent into Crete  
The statute was so inlie rigure  
They toke þeir sorow as it cam abought  
Til at þe laste it fell to oon Theseus  
That he muste go forth emonge þe route

Kyng Eges sun beyng in grete doute  
 Touchyng his lyf which myght not be soiourid  
 But *þat* he muste with oþer be devourid 2730  
 ¶ Which Theseus for his worthines  
 And of his knyghthode for *þe* grete increce  
 Burgh manlie force *and* for his high prowes  
 Somtyme was callid *þe* secund Hercules  
 Mong Amozanes he put hymself in prece  
 Weddid Ipolita as bookys specifie  
 The hardy quene callid of ~~fem~~ feminy

[11r, col. a]

¶ And aftyr to Thebes he is gon  
 Halpe *þer* *þe* ladies euerychon oute of thrall  
 Which *þat* compleynynd vpon *þe* kyng Creon 2740  
 Which *þem* distroubild like *þeir* estates roiall  
 To holde and halow *þe* festes funerall  
 Of *þe* lordes as Quenys and princesses  
 Of wyuelie trouth to shewe *þeir* kyndnes  
 ¶ ffor when *þe* Duke *þe* maner hadde seen  
 And of Creon *þe* grete iniquite  
 To *þe* ladies he made deliuer agayn  
 The lordes ~~þony~~ bones of routh *and* of pite  
 Yit in his youth oute of his cite  
 He was deliuerde by statute full odibil 2750  
 To be ~~deue~~ devourid of this beste horribil  
 ¶ [H]e goth to prison for all his semlines  
 As *þe* statute felly did ordeigne  
 But of routh and of ~~get~~ gentilnes  
 Hym to *preserue* from *þat* dedlie peine  
 Of kyng Minos *þe* goodlie doughtres tweine  
 Adriane shope a remedie  
 And fayre Phedra *þat* he shul not die  
 ¶ Thurgh *þeire* helpe he hath *þe* monstre slayn  
*þat* wes dredefull and and outhlie for to se 2760  
 By them he eskapid wherof he was ful fayn  
 Ledde *þem* with hym toward his cuntre  
 And by the way deuoyde of all pite  
 Adriane s he falslie hath forsake  
 Agayn his suraunce *and* Phedra he getake  
 ¶ In mydde *þe* se he lefte hir in an Ile  
 Towarde no partie she knewe no decline  
 She crieth she wepith alas *þe* harde while  
 ffor of hir fate *þis* was *þe* mortall fine  
*þat* for pite Bachus *þe* godde of wyne 2770  
 Toke hir to his wyfe whos crown of stones · fine

Doth in hevyn now with · ix · sterres shine  
 ¶ Thus of Theseus ye may beholde and se  
 To Adriane the grete vnstedfastnes  
 The grete ontrouth þe mutabilite  
 The broke assurance and newfangilnes  
 But sely women kepe þeir stedfastnes  
 Ay ondefylid som *oper* while of þeir kynde  
 Thei muste þem purvey when men be found vnkynd  
 ¶ Of Theseus I can no more yow seyn 2780  
 In this matier to make of hym memorie ·  
 But to kyng Minos I wyl resort ageyn  
 To tell hough fortune ay fals and *transitoie*  
 In what poyntes defacyd hath his glorie  
 ffyrste of ichon Bochas doth specifie  
 Of Paciphe þe foule avourtrie ·  
 ¶ Which was his wyf *and* stooode wel on his *grace*  
 To his plesaunce she was moste souereigne  
 But a cloude of ful small trespas  
 Made hyr lorde at hir disdeigne 2790  
 But he of wysdom bare *priu*elie his peine  
 ffro such case · þis is my sentence  
 Let prudent husbondes take þem to pacience ·  
 ¶ An *oper* thyng ~~eke~~ Minos gan eke compleyn  
 Hauyng in hert þerof ful grete grevaunce  
 That he loste his feyre d[*ought*]ris & tweine  
 And Minotaurus slayn with mischaunce  
 Eke vnto hym it was a grete penaunce  
 þat Theseus was goon at liberte ·  
 And from all tribute deliuerde þe Cite · 2800

**[11r, col. b]**

¶ It grevid hym eke in countenaunce and charite  
 That Theseus Adrian forsoke  
 It likyd hym not also þe maner  
 Vnto his wyf þat he Phedra toke  
 And yit þis Phedra lyke as seith þe booke  
 Hadde · ij · sunnys · by þis Theseus  
 ffyrste Demophon *and* next Antilocus  
 ¶ Eke Theseus aftyr gan hym drawe  
 Towarde Cecill in stele armyd clene ·  
 With Pirotheus in armys his felowe 2810  
 ffor to ravish Proserpina the quene ·  
 But of intende ful onclene ·  
 Lovid hir stepson callid Ipolitus  
 But for he was to hir daungerus  
 ¶ And to hir luste froward and contrarie

In his s apport not goodelie and benigne ·  
 Of fals intent anon she gan to varie  
 And againe hym ~~self~~ full felly to maligne  
 With a pretens of many tokyn and signe  
 Of womanhed she gan hym accuse  
 Hir avoutrie falslie to excuse 2821  
 ¶ She hath accusid yong Ipolitus 2829  
 Of fals avoutrie in his tendir age 2830  
 Tolde and affermyd to Duke Theseus  
 With ful bolde chere and playn visage  
 Hough he purposid ~~ones~~ ^oonlie^ in his rage  
 Onlie by force hir beaute to oppresse  
 Hir lorde besechyng to reforme *and* redresse  
 ¶ A grete iniurie don vnto his wyf  
 While he was absent for þinges ~~þat~~ bare charge  
 Wyues of talez ben sumtyme inuentiue  
 To suffre þeir tonges falslie flen at large  
 But folk ~~þat~~ liste of daunger þem discharge 2840  
 Of such accusyng ne take þei no heede  
 Tyl þe trouth be tried oute in dede 2842  
 ¶ Who sey ~~þat~~ women can not Imagine 2822  
 In þeir defence talez full vntrue  
 To þeir desyre yf men liste not incline  
 Nor on þeir feyned fals wo to rue  
 Anon þei cam compasse thynges newe  
 ffysh and fynd oute in their intencion  
 A couerte cloude to shadow þeir treson 2828  
 ¶ I mene no thyng of wyues ~~þat~~ be goode 2843  
 Nor of women ~~þat~~ floure in Innocence  
 ffor godde forbede and the holy rode  
 But men shuld do due reuerence  
 To þeir nobles and þeir excellens  
 Declare þeir beaute and þeir vertu shewe  
 And more þem cherish because ~~þer~~ be f but fewe ·  
 ¶ Touchyng the accusing agayn Ipolitus 2850  
 Thof it so were ~~þat~~ it was fals in dede  
 Yit he for shame and fere of Theseus  
 As in storie ye may beholde and rede  
 In his hert he caught a maner drede  
~~þat~~ he alas þis seli yong knyght  
 ffled and withdraw hym out of his fadirs sight  
 ¶ His Indignacion pleinlie to eschewe  
 Thof by s desert in him was no lake  
 Of hasty drede as he can remewe  
 Outhir in a chare or vppon hors bak 2860  
 His hors affrayed ~~þer~~ fell a soden wra[k]

Doune from a roche pendaunt as ye shal lere  
He and his chare were drowned both in fere  
¶ Thus vngilti · most lusty in his youth  
He was conueied to his destruccion  
The sclaunder conspired as it is wel cou[th]  
By fals Phedra but in conclusion

[11v, col. a]

The sclaunder turnyd to hir confusion  
ffor when she wyste Ipolitus weddid  
Thurgh hir defaute anon for shame *and* drede 2870

¶ She toke a swerd ful sharpe whet *and* grounde  
And þerwithall she rofe hir here in tweine  
Lo hough þat vengeance wyl ay agayn rebounde  
On them þat falslie don þer þe bysy peine  
To sclaunder folke for like os þei ordeigne  
With þeir defautes oþer folke to ~~a~~quyte atwite  
God at þe laste þeir malice can aquite ·

¶ Yit som bokys of Phedra do recorde  
That she ashamyd and confusid of þis dede  
Hyng herself vp ful high with a corde 2880  
Lo hough fals sclaunder can folk quyte þer mede  
Wherfor I counsel euery man take hede  
In such matiers as stond in no certein  
ffrom hasty language þeir tonges to restreine

**De casu Cizaris ducis Regis Iabyn**

Among oþer stories woful for to rede  
Al besprent with terys in his face  
fful sodenlie Iohn Bochas can tak hede  
Amyddys of þe prece Zizara cam to place  
And hough þat fortune can eke to mansse  
This proude duke ful myghty *and* notable 2890  
Of King Iabin callid þe constable

¶ Of his oft leder and governere  
To Israel verrey mortall foo ·  
With peple he roode lyke a Conqueroure  
And wher þat euer his meny did go  
The erth quoke þe peple drie hym so  
ffledde from his face wher he came aferre  
ix · hundird waynes he hadde for þe werre

¶ Stronglie enarmyd for þe werres  
Who þat approachid to mayme hym *and* to wound 2900  
ffor þis Tiranne of custom oft sithis  
Hadde grete delite þe Iewys to confound  
^[And al] þe þat his swerd hath founde^  
Kyng Iabin badde þe prince of Chanaan

In Israel spare chylde nor man  
 ¶ This Cizara was sent for to be þeir scourge  
 By goddys sufferance þeir synnez <sup>^to^</sup> chastyse  
 Their olde offence to punish and to pourge  
 As a flagel in many sondrie wyse  
 But whan of resoun þei gan þen better advise 2910  
 And for þeir trespasez to fall in repentaunce  
 Godde gan withdrawe þe hand of his vengeance  
 ¶ ffor þeir mischef þe gan þeir lorde to knowe  
 ffelyng þe prykke of his punicion  
 And mercy then hath onbent þe bowe  
 Of his full Ire and castigacion  
 To godde þei made þeir Inuocacion  
 And he them herd in þeir mortal drede  
 In Iudicum þe storie ye may rede  
 ¶ Hough in þe while þat þis Cizara 2920  
 Shape <sup>^hym^</sup> of newe þe Iewys to oppresse  
 In þeir defens godde sent þem oon Delbora  
 A prophetisse þe story berith witnes  
 To yeve them counsail þeir harmys to redresse  
 And by þe spirit of hir prophecie  
 ffor to withstond þe grete tirannie  
 ¶ Of Cizara which was descendid doune  
 With a gret oste into þe felde repeyrid  
 But Delbora of high discrecion 2929  
 And for to fight þeir corages sore apeyrid 2931  
 When þat she sawe þe Iewys dispeyrid 2930  
 She made þem fyrste deuoutlie in þer drede 2932

**[11v, col. b]**

To crye to godde to helpe them in þeir nede 2933  
 ¶ And when she herde *and* knewe of þe commyng 2941  
 Of Cisara full grete puisaunce  
 That was cunstable vnto þe myghty kyng  
 Callid Iabin with al his ordinaunce  
 Vpon Iewes for to take vengeance  
 Þis Delbora can prudentlie intende  
 Þe Iewes *partie* by wysdom to defende ·  
 ¶ She badde barath hir husbond anon right  
 Of Neptalim X · *mille* with hym take  
 Agayn Cisara to fight for þeir right 2950  
 And þat he shuld a grete inarmen make  
 But he for drede þis iourney hath forsak[e]  
 And durst not agayn hym to werry  
 But she were present *and* liste hym to conv[eie]  
 ¶ Well well *quod* she sith it stondeth so

Then of wantrust ye haue a maner drede  
 I wyl myself with yow go  
 Yow to supporte in this grete nede  
 But trustith fully as ye shall fynde in[dede]  
*pat* a woman with laude honour *and* glorie 2960  
 Shal fro yow wynne þe prys of this victorie  
 ¶ It folowyd after sothlie as she sayde  
 And wyselie she made hir ordinaunce  
 And þe chefe charge on hirselfe she layde  
 As princesse of Iewes gouernaunce  
 And prudentlie gan hirselfe avaunce  
 With godde conueied *and* support of his grace  
 With Cizara to mete in his ^the^ face  
 ¶ And speciallie touchyng þis viage 2970  
 Godde toke away þe spirit and myght  
 ffro Cizara his force and his corage  
 That he was fereful to entre into fight  
 Kepte his chare and toke hym onto flight  
 Knowyng no place surelie in to byde  
 Tyll *pat* Iahell a woman did hym hyde  
 ¶ Within hir tente almoste dede for drede  
 Vndir a mantel desirous for to drynk  
 She gaue hym mylk þe slepe fell in his hede  
 And while *pat* he for hevynes gan wynk 2980  
 And sadlie slepte she gan hir bethynk  
 Thof she wold for Cizara so shape  
*pat* with his lyfe he shoulde not ascape ·  
 ¶ She toke a nayle *pat* was sharpe *and* longe  
 And couertlie gan hirselfe avaunce  
 With an hambir myghty rounde and stronge  
 She draue a nayle · lo þis was his vengeaunce  
 Thurghoute his hede · se here þe soden chaunce  
 Of tirannez *pat* truste in fortune  
 Which wyl not longe to suffre continue  
 ¶ In þeir fals vsurpyng tirannie 2990  
 To holde peples in longe subieccion  
 She can them blandish with hir flatric  
 Vndir coloure of fals collusioun  
 And with a soden transmutacion  
 ffortune them can *pat* pore folke trouble  
 Reuerse þeir pride with hir face double  
 ¶ What shuld I lengar in þis matier tarie  
 Thurgh *pat* lordeshipe be myghty famus  
 Let Cizara be youre exemplarie  
 Conquest victorie þof þei be victorius · 3000  
 It not indureth · but it be vertuus



Vnto þe worlde yf vertu be h behynde  
Men not reioyse to haue þeir name in mynde [end of quire 1]

[12r, col. a]

¶ffor fortune thurgh hir frowardnes  
Hath kynges put oute of Regiones  
And she hath also thurgh hir doublenes  
[D]estruyd linages with their successions  
Made she not sometye hir translacions  
Of the kyngdom callid Argivois  
To be transportid to Lacedemoniys 3010  
¶The same tyme when Cisare the proude  
Began goddys peple to put vnder fote  
ffamous trompe blewe hir name vp loude  
With sugrid sownys semyng wondir swete  
But all his pride was rent vp by þe rote  
When þat his glorie · was outward most shewyng  
But who may truste euer eny woldie þing  
¶ffo[lk]ys haue afforne seen þe fundacion  
By remembraunce of olde antiquite 3020  
[Of] myghty Troy and ^of^ Ilion  
[Af]tyr destruyd of ^by^ Grekys þe Cite  
[T]o vs declaryng the mutabilite  
[Of] fals fortune whos fauour laste but awhile  
Shewyng ay truest whan she wyl begyle  
¶So variable she is in hir delites  
Hur whele vntrusty *and* frowardlie moving  
Recorde I take of Madianitez  
Their vnwar fall full doolefully pleynyng  
Which shewyd themself pitevouslie wepyng  
To Iohn Bochas as he in writyng sought 3030  
Hough þat fortune agayn þeir princys wrought  
¶Which þat governd þe land of Madian  
Trustyng of ^in^ pride of þeir grete puissaunce  
Agayn Iewys a werre þei began  
Purposing to bryng them to outraunce  
But þat godde þat holdith of werre þe balaunce  
And can of princis oppresse the veine glorie  
Yevith where hym liste þe conquest *and* victorie  
¶Not to grete noumbre nor to grete multitude  
But to þat partie wher he seth þe right 3040  
His dredfull hande shortlie to conclude  
So holde vp by grace and sendith his myght  
The higher hand where he caste his sight  
And liste his power and his fauour showe  
Be it to many or be it to fewe

¶ The wronge partie gladlie hath a fall  
 Thof þer be Millions many mo þan oon  
 I take witnes of Ieroboall  
 Which is callid also Gedeon  
 þat with · CCCC faught agayn þe foon 3050  
 Of Israhel þe bible can deuyse  
 Whan he to godde hadde made his sacrifice  
 ¶ Shewyng to hym a thyng mervelus  
 When þe flees with siluer dewe full shene  
 Was sprent and wete þe storie tellith þus  
 And rounde aboute þe soile and all þe grene  
 Was founde drie *and* no droppe seene ·  
 In tokyn oonlie þis Duke þis knyghtly man  
 Shulde haue victorie of all Madian  
 ¶ This Gedeon take with hym but a fewe 3060  
 CCC · chosin which lappid þe ryver  
 Godde vnto such tokyns did shewe  
 And evidences afforn þat were ful clere  
 That he shuld be of right goode chere  
 And in wys his aduersaries drede  
 ffor no prowes nor manhode  
 ¶ Where godde aboue holdith champarty  
 Ther may agayn hym be made no defence ·

**[12r, col. b]**

ffor to strength wysdom ne chyualrie  
 Agayn his might is feble of resistance 3070  
 This was well previd in experience  
 When · CCC · with Gedeon in noumbre  
 So many thousandes by *grace* did encombre  
 ¶ This saide peple diuide into · iij ·  
 With their trumpis vpon þe derke nyght  
 By Gedeon þat hadde þe souereignete  
 With voide pottes and laumpis þerin light  
 And þus arayed þei entrid into fight  
 But vnto þem þis tokyn was fyrst knowe  
 When Gedeon his trumpe did blowe 3080  
 ¶ Thei blewe ichon and lowd gan to crie  
 Brake þeire pottes and shewed anon right  
 As þe storie doth pleylnlie specifie  
 Their lampis shewyd with a ful soden light  
 Wherfor þeir ennemies astonyed in þeir sight  
 Were so troublid vpon euery syde ·  
 That in the felde þei durst not abide  
 ¶ The crie was þus of them euerychon  
 Thank to þe lorde moste noble and glorius

Prys to þe swerde of myghty Gedeon 3090  
 Which hath vs causid to be victorius  
 Made oure enemies moste malicius  
 Thurgh influence onlie of his grace  
 ffor verrey fere to fle affore oure face  
 ¶ Thus can þe lorde of magnificence  
 The meke exalte *and* the proude oppresse  
 Like as he fynd in hertes difference  
 So of his power he can his domus dresse  
 Mercy mengyd with his rightuesnes  
 His iugementes with longe delay differred 3100  
 And ar he punish pite is ay *preferryd* ·  
 ¶ Myghty *princis* remembre þat youre powere  
 Is transitorie and no while abydyng  
 Has þis tragedie hath rehersed here  
 By euidences notable in shewyng  
 And by examples in substaunce witnessyng  
 þat all tirannes platlie to *termine*  
 Muste from þeir astate sodenlie decline  
 ¶ Phebus fresshe from his mydday spere  
 His bemys brightest and hottest oute spredyng 3110  
 But cloudie skyes ful oft approche nere  
 To eclipse his light with þeir vnware *commyng*  
 Non erthly ioy longe here abydyng  
 Recorde of Titan which stondmele doth shyne  
 Yit towarde nyght · his bemys decline  
 ¶ Whan þat fortune is fayrest of hir chere  
 By apparence and moste blandisshyng  
 Then is she falsest iche ceson of þe yere  
 Hir soden chaunges now vp now down turnyng  
 The nyghtyngale in may doth freshly syng 3120  
 But a bakwynter can somyr vndirmyne  
 And all his freshnes he can sodenlie decline · 3122  
**De Casu Iocaste Regine Ciuitatis Thebes**  
 Of quene Iocasta Bochas doth eke indite 3158  
 Princes of Thebes a myghty grete cite  
 Of hir vnhappes he dolfully doth write 3160  
 Ymagenyng hough he hir did se  
 To hym appere in grete aduersite  
 Lyke a woman þat wolde in terys reigne  
 For þat fortune can at hir so disdeigne  
 ¶ And thof she were defacyd of figure  
 Ther shewyd in hir a maner mageste  
 Of quenlie honour pleyntlie to discure ·

[12v, col. a]

His fortunes and infelicite  
And to declare pleinlie hough þat she  
Of all *princesse* þ which þat stode in estate 3170  
She was hir self moste infortunate  
¶ Which gave to Bochas ful grete occasion  
When he sawe hir pitevus apparaile  
ffor to make a lamentacion  
Of vncouth sorowes which did hir assaile  
With a tragedie to wepe and to wayle  
Hir importable and hir dedlie stryfe  
Which þat she hadde duryng all hir lyf  
¶ He write of hir a storie large and pleine 3180  
And of hir birth fyrst he doth diffine  
And affermith in his booke certeine  
She was descendid of a noble line  
In flouryng age eke when she did shyne  
She weddyd was for hir grete beaute  
Vnto þe kyng of Thebes þe Cite ·  
¶ Which in his tyme was callid laius  
And when hir wombe by *processe* gan arise  
The kyng was gladde and also desirus  
The childis fate to knowe in som wyse 3190  
And thought he wolde go do sacrifice  
Vnto Apollo to haue knowlegyng befor  
Touchyng þe childe when <sup>^that^</sup> it were born  
¶ What shulde folowe in conclusion  
He was desirus hasty for to se  
ffyrst by the heuynlie disposicion  
And by the fauoure yf it wold be  
Of Apollos myghty deite  
To haue answeare among his rites all  
Of his chylde what fate shuld fall  
¶ His answeare ~~thought~~ <sup>thof</sup> <sup>^</sup> it wer contrarie 3200  
To his desire · yit what it is indede  
Apollo tolde hym · and liste no lengar tarie  
That þis childe shuld verrelie in dede  
Shende his fadir *and* make his sydys blede  
And with his handes þer was non oþer wey  
But on his swerd he must nedys dey  
¶ The kyng was hevy *and* trusted on þis sentence  
Sorowful in hert godde wote *and* nothyng fayn  
He caste afforn thurgh his *prouidence*  
That in all haste his son shuld be slayn 3210  
And þat he wolde not on oure delayn  
Aftyr his birth þ but bad his men to gon

In to a forest and sle þe chylde anon  
 ¶ Lyke his biddyng þe ministres wroute in dede  
 Takyng the chyld tendre and yong of age  
 And in to a forest with þem þei can it lede  
 To be devourid of bestes moste sauage  
 The modir alas fell almoste in a rage  
 Seyng hir chyld so younglie fayre of face  
 Shal þis be dede and did neuer no trespas 3220  
 ¶ Litill wondir thof she felt smert  
 To all women I reporte me  
 And vnto modirs þat be tendir of hert  
 In this matier Iuges for to be  
 Was it not routh Was it not pite  
 That a princesse and a quene alas  
 Shuld knowe hir chyld devourid in such a case  
 ¶ Aftyr his byrth laius toke goode kepe  
 Withoute mercy respite or delay  
 That vnto on which þat kepte his shepe 3230  
 This yong chylde vpon a certen day  
 Shal be deliuerd in all þe haste he may  
 To þis intent it myght not be socured

**[12v, col. b]**

But þat she shulde of bestys be devourid ·  
 ¶ This said shepherd goth forth anon right  
 The childe beholdyng of loke and face  
 Thought in his hert and in his invard sight  
 He shuld do vnto godde a grete trespas  
 To sle this chylde wherefor he did hym grace  
 Toke fyrste a knyf and did his bysy peyn 3240  
 Thurghoute his fete to make in holys twei[ne]  
 ¶ He toke a small rodde *and* a young osyere  
 Percyð þe fete alas it was pite  
 Bounde hym faste and by goode leyser  
 The yong chylde he hyngre vpon a tre  
 Of intent þat it s ne shuld be  
 Thurgh wylde bestes cruell and sauage  
 Be sodenlie devourid in þeire rage  
 ¶ Vpon a tre while he hyngre thus bounde  
 Of aventure by som occasioun 3250  
 A straunge shephird hath þe chylde founde  
 Which of pite and routh toke hym down  
 Bare it with hym home vnto his town  
 Made his wyfe for to do hir peine  
 To fostir þis chylde with hir pappes tweine  
 ¶ And when he was brought forth *and* recured

And ful made hole of his woundis sore  
 This yonge childe which all þis hath indurid  
 When he in age gann to wex more  
 And þat nature gan hym restore 3260  
 The said shepherd þat loued hym best of all  
 Aftyr his hurtes Edippus did hym call  
 ¶ffor Edippus is no more to seyn  
 Who þat conceivith þe exposicion  
 But fete percid thurghoute both tweine  
 In þat language as made his mencione  
 And to Meropa þe wyf of kyng Polibon  
 The shephird of full humble intente  
 Gan þe chyld ful louly to present  
 ¶And for þat she was baren of nature 3270  
 She and þe kyng of oon affeccion  
 Toke Edippus both into þeir cure  
 As sun and heire by adopcion  
 To reigne in Corinthie by successioun  
 The kyng þe Quene off Corinthie þe cuntre  
 Had þe chylde in so grete charite  
 ¶Let men considir in þeir discrecioun  
 Soden chaunge of euery maner thyng  
 Þis chylde send oute for his destruccioun  
 And now prouided for to be a kynge 3280  
 And thurgh fortune ay double in hir werkyng  
 He þat was reffris to bestes moste sauage  
 Is now receyvid to kynglie heritage 3283  
 ¶And prouided to be a kynges ayere 3291  
 Of hym þat stode in deth of venture  
 ffortune can shewe hirsself both foule *and* fayre  
 ffolkys brought low full well recure  
 And liste not gruge agayn þeir chastysyng  
 Godde oute of myschefe can sodenlie þem bryng  
 And such as can pacientlie indure  
 ¶But whan Eddippus was grow vnto good age  
 Lyke a yonge prince incresyng in nobles  
 Lusty and stronge and fresh of his corage 3300  
 Of aventure it fell so in sothnes  
 Oþer by stryf or by sum frowardnes  
 Or by sum contec he had knouelechyng  
 How he was not sun to þe kyng  
 ¶As by descent but a ferre foreine  
 Where vpon ful sore he gan to muse ·

[13r, col. a]

And for to know he to be put in certeine

Thought he wold sum *maner* practik vse  
 And to þe kyng he gan hymself excuse  
 ffor a tyme fordrow his presence 3310  
 Tyl þat he knew by sum experience  
 ¶ Or by sum signe hough þe matier stode  
 Thought he wolde do his diligence  
 To know his fadir and also of what bloode  
 He was descendid · and haue sum euidence  
 [T]ouchyng trouth hough in stode in sentence  
 And þervpon to be certified  
 [T]oward Apollo faste he hath hym hyede  
 ¶ Which in Cirra worshippid was þat tyme  
 [An]d gaue answers aftyr his deite 3320  
 [T]o folke þat cam at euen and at prime  
 Of euery doute and ambiguite  
 [A]nd þer Edippus fallyng on his kne  
 [A]ftyr his offring had an answer anon  
 [To]ward Grece þat he shuld goon  
 ¶ Vn]to mounteine þat phocis bare þe name  
 And þer he shuld of his kynred here  
 Eke like his fate þe answere was þe same  
 He shuld sle his oune fadir dere  
 And aftyr þat to Thebes drawe hym nere 3330  
 Wedde his modir of verrei ignoraunce  
 Callid Iocasta thurgh his onhappy chaunce  
 ¶ He liste no lengar tarie ne abide  
 Þis saide Edippus · but forth in haste goth he  
 And on his way he gan anon to ryde  
 Tyll he þe mountein off Phocis did se  
 Vndir the which stode a grete cuntre  
 Callid Citoyens which þat tyme in *certeine*  
 Werryd them þat were on þe mounteine  
 ¶ His fadir Laius þurgh his chyualrie 3340  
 With Citoyens is entrid in to bataile  
 And Edippus cam with þe partie  
 Of þe hylles armyd in plate and maile  
 And as þei can iche oþer to assaile  
 Amonge þe prees at þeir encontring  
 Of auenture Edippus slough þe kyng  
 ¶ Onknown to hym þat he his fadir was  
 Hauyng þerof no suspicion  
 Passid his way platlie þus þe case  
 And eke vnknown he cam vnto þe town 3350  
 Of myghty Thebes wherfor his high renoun  
 He was receivid with ful grete reuerence  
 By cause he slough þe kyng in þeir defence

¶ Spinx þe *serpent* horrible for to se  
Whilom ordeigned by incantacions  
ffor ro destrue þe town and þe cuntre  
By his compassid sleighty questions  
Slough man and chylde in all þe regions  
Such as not couth by wysdom nor reson  
Make of his probleme playn exposicion 3360

¶ Who passid by he couth not not hym excuse  
But þe Serpent hym felly wolde assaile  
With a probleme make hym ^to^ muse  
Callid of *summe* þe vncouthe diuinale  
Which for to expoun who it did faile  
þer was non help · but þat he muste die  
By þe statute þer was non oþer remedie

¶ And ~~for~~ ^for all folk^ haue no knowlegyng  
Of þis demaund what it was in dede 3370  
I wyl reherce her of in my wrytyng  
Compendiuslie þat men may it rede  
ffyrst þis Serpent who þat list tak hede  
Was monstruus and spake agayn nature

[13r, col. b]

And yf it fell þat eny creature  
¶ Man or woman shuld forth by passe  
High or low of all þat regioun  
As I said arste þer was noon oþer grace  
But yf he made an exposicion  
Of this Serpentes frowarde question  
He muste die and make no defens 3380  
The which demaund was þis in sentence

¶ The Serpent askyd what may it be  
Beste or foule whan it is forth brought  
þat hath power to stond go or fle  
And aftyrward yf it be well sought  
Goth fyrste on foure or els goth he nought  
Aftyr by *processe* on thre and then on tweine  
And efte agayn as nature doth ordeigne

¶ He goth on .ij. and efte on .ij. agayn  
Eke kyndlie nature disposith it so  
And in awhile it foloweth in certeine 3390  
To þe matier which he cam frome  
He muste of kynde resorte agayn þerto  
And who can not þe menyng clerlie se  
He of þe Serpent shall deuourid be ·

¶ Which Eddipus sobir in his intent  
Not to rakkyll nor hasty of language



But in his herte of gret aduishment  
 And full demure of looke and visage  
 Considerith firste þe perilus ^and^ fell passage 3400  
 Saw wel befor þat it was no Iape  
 And full prouyded þat no worde ascape  
 ¶ At goode leyser with hole mynde and memorie  
 Seyng þe cruelnes of his mortall emprise  
 His lyfe dependyng between deth and victorie  
 This beste *quod* he pleynlie to deuyse  
 Is fyrste a chyld which may not suffice  
 When it is born þe trouth is all day seene  
 Withoutyn helpe hymselfe to susteine ·  
 ¶ Aftyr on .iiij. he naturallie doth crepe 3410  
 ffor impotencie and grene tendirnes  
 Norices can tell which don þem kepe  
 But aftyrwarde vp he doth hym dresse  
 With his .ij. fete þe third to expresse  
 His hande on bench or support of sum wall  
 To holde hym vp · leste he cach a fall  
 ¶ And aftyrwarde incresyng his myght  
 To gretter age when he doth atteine  
 Of his nature þen he goth vpriht  
 Myghtilie vppon his ~~he~~ leggys tweine 3420  
 Then *comm*yth age his power to restreine  
 Crokyd and lame lyke as men may se  
 With a staffe impotent to make vp leggys .iiij.  
 ¶ But when febilnes or seknes don assaile  
 On handes and fete he muste bowe and lought  
 ffor crokyd *potentes* may not þen availe  
 When lusty age is banneshid *and* shit oute  
 Then eft agayn herof may be no doughte  
 With .iiij. fete to erthe he doth returne  
 ffro whence he com þerto to soiourne · 3430  
 ¶ All cam fro erth · and all to erth shall  
 Agayn nature is no proteccion  
 Worldlie estates ichon þei be mortall  
 þer may no tresour make redempcion  
 Who ~~elime~~ clymeth highest his fall is lowe ·  
 A mene estate is beste whos couth it kno[we]  
 Betwene high presumyng *and* bowyng do[un to lowe]  
 ¶ ffor whoso sitte highest · standith in ~~party~~ iep[artie]

[13v, col. a]

Vndir daunger of ffortune lyk to fall  
 Myschef and pouerte as for þeire partie 3440  
 Be lowest brought amonge þe peples all

Summe folke taste sugre summe tast gall  
 Salomon *perfor* mirroure off sapience  
 Betwen grette riches *and* betwen indigence  
 ¶Axid a mene callid suffisaunce  
 To holde hym contente of competent expence  
 Not to reioyse of to grete habundaunce  
 And ay in pouerte to stand in pacience  
 Sobre with his plente in scarste ~~not~~ noon offence  
 As of grugyng but betwen ioy and smert 3450  
 Thank godde of all and euer be ~~gle~~ glad in herte  
 ¶Erth is þe ende of euery maner of man  
 ffor þe riche with grete possession  
 Dieth als son as I reherse can  
 As doth the pore in tribulacion  
 ffor deth ne maketh no diuision  
 By singler fauour but betwene both elich  
 Of þe porest and hym þat is moste riche  
 ¶This saide probleme concludith in this case 3460  
 Which þe Serpent gan sleightlie purpose  
 That when a chyld is fyrste born alas  
 Kynde to his dethwarde anon doth hym dispose  
 Iche day a iourney *per* is noon *oper* glose  
 Experience can tell in euery age  
 Hough þis worlde is here but a pilgremage  
 ¶This said Edyppus fyrst in Thebes born  
 Send to a forest devourid for to be  
 ffounde and broute forth as ye haue herde befor  
 And aftyr drawyng home to his cuntre  
 Slough his fadir so infortunat was he 3470  
 Of froward happys folowyng all his liue  
 As þis Tragedie his fortune shall descriue  
 ¶But for þat he thurgh his prudence  
 Vnto þe Serpent declarid euery dele  
 He slough hym aftyr by myghty violence  
 More by wysdom þan armure made of stele  
 Stace of Thebes can tell yow full well  
 Which was o cause yf ye liste to seen  
 Wherthurgh Edyppus weddid hath þe quene  
 ¶Callid Iocasta princes of þe cite 3480  
 His own modir vnknownen to þem both  
 And þof she were right fayre vpon to se  
 With this mariage the goddes were right wrothe  
 ffor þeire alliaunce nature gan to lothe  
 Shuld take hir sunn to be hir husbonde  
 ¶There was *per*in noon conuenience  
 To be supportid be kynde nor by reson

But yf so be the heuynlie influence  
 Disposid it by the inclinacion 3490  
 Of *summ* fals froward constellacion  
 Causid by ~~Saturne~~ Saturne or Mars þe froward sterre  
 To engendir debate or *summe* mortall werre  
 ¶ In this matier pleyntie <sup>^this^</sup> I deme  
 Off no cunying but of opinion  
 Thof he were crownyd with sceptre *and* diademe  
 To reigne in Thebes þe strange myghty toun  
 That *summe* aspecte com from hevyn adoune  
 Infortunate ~~fre~~ froward and full of rage  
 Which agayn kynde denyed his mariage 3500  
 ¶ He crownyd was by assent of þe town  
 fflouryng a ceson by souereignete of pece  
 And while he helde þer possession  
 [Su]nnes and doughtres he hadde doutles

[13v, col. b]

The fyrste sun callid ~~Ethio~~ Ethiocles  
 Pollicenes was callid þat othir  
 As seith Bochas þe secund broþer  
 ¶ Also he hadde goodlie douthres tweine  
 The eldist callid was Antigonie  
 The secund namyd was Imenie 3510  
 And both þei were right fayre vpon to se  
 The Quene Iocasta myght no gladder be  
 Than to remembre whan þei wex in age  
 Hough goddys hadde encrecid þeir linage  
 ¶ It was hir joy and hir felicite  
 To sen hir chyldren þat were semeli *and* fayre  
 But oft in ioy yit cometh aduersite  
 And hope vnsuryd whan hope doth oft appeyre  
 Contrarius truste wyl gladlie þer repayre  
 Where fals wenyng in hertes is conceyvid 3520  
 Thurgh ignorance which fele folke haue dece[yued]  
 ¶ What þing in erth is more deceyvuable  
 Then when a man supposith verelie  
 And from his ioy is remevid sodenlie 3525  
 W ffor where fortune is founde to hasty 3526  
 In prosperite for to stonde stable 3524  
 To trice folke theyre grevys tendir  
 ffor soden chaungis be hatefull to nature  
 ¶ Vnware wo þat comyth of gladnes  
 Is vnto hertes right passyng encombrus 3530  
 And who hath felte his parte of wylfulnes  
 Sorow suyng on is to hym odius

And werst of all and moste contrarius  
 Is when estates highest off renoun  
 Ben from þeir noblesse sodenlie brought doun  
 ¶ Ther is no glorie which þat sewith hir  
 That fals fortune can so magnifie  
 But when his laude brightest is and clere  
 She can eclipse it with som cloudie sky  
 With vnware sorow oonlie off Envie 3540  
 Seth of Edippus anð opyn evidence  
 Which by his lyve had experience  
 ¶ Of high noblesse and þer with also ·  
 Parte importable of grete aduersite  
 His ioy ay meynt with full mortall woo  
 ffor while he reignyd in Thebes his cite  
 And Iocasta with full grete roialte  
 Within þe cuntre þer fell a pestilence  
 The peple infectyng with all his violence  
 ¶ Thurghoute all þe lande and region 3550  
 In eueri age but moste grevuslie  
 Of them ichon þat were of þe town  
 The infeccion spredde most specialli  
 And of vengeaunce þe swerd moste rigoruslie  
 Day by day gan to bite and kerve  
 Of yche estate causyng folke to sterve ·  
 ¶ Thus gan increce þe mortalite  
 That euery man stode in partie  
 Of þeire lyves thurghoute þe cuntre  
 So importable was þeire maledie 3560  
 þat men myght here þe peple clepe *and* crye  
 Dispeyrid so were þei of þeire lyvys ·  
 Voyde of all socoure and preseruatyvys  
 ¶ They sought oute herbys *and* spices in þer cofyrs  
 And gan to seke for help and socourys  
 The cause inquirid of prudent philosophirs  
 And of þeir moste experte diuinoures  
 Whi þat þe goddys with so sharpe shoures  
 Of pestilience and in so cruell wyse  
 Lyste þem alas so mortally chastyse · 3570

**[14r, col. a]**

¶ But among all soth is þis case  
 [þer] was founde on full prudent and right wyse  
 A prophete callid Tyresias  
 Of prophecie hauyng a souereigne prise  
 Which þat affermyd *and* sayde in his advise  
 As vnto hym was shewyd by miracle

Phebus hym self declaryng þe article  
 [¶]Cause of this seknes and þeis maledies  
 [A]s þe goddys pleyndie haue disposid  
 [A]nd Senec eke in his tragedies 3580  
 [T]hof þe cause be secure and closid  
 [V]nto the tyme þer be a kyng deposid  
 [W]hich slough his fadir *and* refte of his lyfe  
 [A]nd hath eke take his modre to his wife  
 ¶[T]yll þis be don and execute in dede  
 [þer] may be made no redempcion  
 [B]ut pestilence shal multiplie and sprede  
 [A]y more and more thurghoute þat region  
 [T]yll vnto tyme þat he be put adoun  
 [F]rom his crown which not longe agon 3590  
 [H]is fadre slough among his mortall foon  
 ¶And hath his modre weddyd eke also  
 Agayn þe lawe agayn all right  
 Tyll þis vengeaunce on þis cryme be do  
 Ther shall be werre pestilence and fyght  
 Sorow and stryf and euery maner wyght  
 Of vengeaunce his neyghbour shal hate  
 Broþer with broþer and bloode with bloode debate  
 ¶This is all and summe þer may be no socoure  
 Which brought þe peple in grete hevynes 3600  
 ffor Tiresia the grete diuinoure  
 By prophecie tolde þem thus expresse  
 And at þe laste by tokyns and witnes  
 Men vndrestode by signes oute shewyng  
 This pestilence was brought in by þe kyng  
 ¶And thof þe peple gaue no grete credence  
 To Tiresia nor to his prophocie  
 The Quene Iocasta caught an evidence  
 And in hert a grete fantasie  
 Specially when she did espie 3610  
 Of kyng Edippus þe fete when she sawe woundid  
 Hough þis tale vpon truth is groundid  
 ¶Because also þer was a diuinoure ·  
 Which tolde afforn Edippus shuld be  
 To laius in Thebes successoure  
 Wherby þe kyng · þe Quene and þe Cite  
 ffell in grete trouble and grete aduersite  
 Wel more þen I by writyng can reporte  
 ffor þer was no thyng þat myght þem recomfort  
 ¶ffull oft on þe day Iocasta gan to swoun 3620  
 Kyng Edippus ~~sobbe~~ sobbe crye also *and* wepe  
 In salte terys as þei wold þem drown

Deth crampisshyng into þeir breste gan crepe  
On day compleynyng on nyght þei may not slepe  
Cursyng þe houre of þeir natiuite  
þat þei shuld abide for to se

¶ Their mortall chaunge þeir dedlie aventure  
Their fortune eke which can on them frown  
Impacient and doolefull to indure  
Their froward fate with þeir lokkys brown  
They kyng for Ire caste away his crowne  
And gan to rase for constreint of his peine  
Oute of his hede his wofull ien tweine

3630

¶ Day and nyght he cryed aftyr deth  
Hatefull to com in eny mannes sight  
Moste desirus to yelde vp the breth  
Wofull in hert to com in eny light

[14r, col. b]

Corvid for sorowe feble to stond vp right  
And specially in his dedlie distresse  
ffor drede off shame he daryd in derknes

3640

¶ The cruel constreint off his moste grevaunce  
Was in his sonnes þat hadde hym in despite  
Which can his sorow gretlie to avaunce  
ffor hym to scorne was set all þeir delite  
Was þer neuer man þat stode in werre plight  
ffor þus liggyng and destitute of chere  
Vnto his goddis he made his prayer

¶ Besechyng them with a dooleful hert  
Vpon his wo to haue summe compassion  
And þat þei wolde for to avenge his smerte  
Betwen his sonnys make a diuision  
Yche to bryng oþer to destruction  
This was his prayer in substaunce  
That iche vpon oþer take may vengeaunce

3650

¶ In yerys fewe for þeir vnkyndnes  
Thei herde his prayer as ye haue herde devise  
The brþern .ij. thurgh þeir cursidnes  
Eueryche can oþer mortallie to despise  
ffor lak of grace and for fals couetise  
Ych for his partie desyrus in dede

3660

Be b̄ri forn oþer to reigne and succede

¶ And þus theis brþern moste infortunate  
Betwen þemself fell at ~~disce~~ dissencion  
And finallie þis vnkyndlie debate  
Brought all Thebes vnto destruccion  
Yit was þer fyrste made a conuencion

By interchaungyng · þat iche shuld reigne a yere ·  
 Þat oþer absent to pley and com no nere  
 ¶ This was concludid by þeir both assent  
 And by accord of all þe region 3670  
 Pollicenes rode forth and was absent  
 Ethiocles toke fyrst possession  
 But when þe yere by reuolucion  
 Was com abought he fals of his intent  
 Vnto þe accorde denyed his consent  
 ¶ This was a cause of þeir both strives  
 Pollicenes þus put oute of his right  
 Tyl Adrastus þat kyng was off Argives 3679  
 Which thurgh all Grece grettest was of myght 3687  
 Sent vnto Thebes þe myghty town  
 Vnto his broþer · which absent was withoute  
 Now þat his yere was fully com aboute  
 ¶ But he was fals and frowardlie gan varie 3690  
 Ethiocles from his conuencion  
 ffor which Adrastus no lenger wold tarie  
 When Tideus had made relacion  
 But callid anoon thurghoute his regioun  
 All þe worthy both nye and ferre  
 Agayn Thebes for to begynne a werre ·  
 ¶ ffor þis cause lyke as ye shal here  
 Pollicenes to inforce his partie  
 Weddid hadde þe kynges doughter dere  
 I mene Adrastus floure of Chyualrie 3700  
 When Tideus did to hym certifie  
 Touchyng the answere of Ethiocles  
 And of his trouth hough he was recles  
 ¶ ffals off his promisse and cursidlie forsworn  
 ffor to his trouth non aduertyng had be  
 Nor to þe accord þat was made befor  
 Touchyng þe deliuaunce of Thebes þe [cite]  
 But who þat liste þis storie clerlie se  
 Of þeis .ij. breþern þe dissencion  
 And hough Adrastus lay befor þe town 3710

**[14v, col. a]**

¶ And Tideus þurgh his high promisse  
 ffaught by the way goyng on message  
 And hough of Grece all the worthines  
 With kyng Adrastus went in this viage  
 And of þe mischef þat fell in their passage  
 ffor lak of watyr · tyll þat Isiphilee  
 Norice to ligurgus so fayre vpon to se

¶ Taught Tydeus to fynde oute a ryver  
 She þat did in fayrnes so excelle  
 And hough þe Serpent moste outhlie of his chere 3720  
 Of kyng ligurgus þe chyld slewe at a welle  
 And hough Amphiorax fel doune to helle  
 All to declare me seme it is no nede  
 ffor in the Sege of Thebes ye may it clerlie rede  
 ¶ The storie hole as made is mencion  
 Of outhir partie their puissaunce and þeir myght  
 And Adrastus lay befor þe toune  
 And hough þei met euery day in fight ·  
 And Tideus þe noble famus knyght  
 So renownyd in actes merciall 3730  
 Was slayn alas as he faught at þe walle  
 ¶ And hough þe breþern met among þe prece  
 Lyke .ij. Tigris or lions þat were woode  
 With sherpe sperys þis is doutles  
 Eueryche of othir shed oþer hert blode  
 This was þe fyne · and þus of þem it stode  
 Saue at þeir festys callid funerall  
 þer fell a grete mervaille which reherce I shall  
 ¶ When þei were ~~into~~ brent ^into^ askys dede 3740  
 Of þeir envie þer fell a ful grete wondir  
 Amonge þe brondys and the coles rede  
 High in the ayre þe smoke went asondir  
 þat oon on partie · and þat oþer yondir  
 To declare · þe storie liste not feyne  
 The grete hatred þat was betwix þem tweine  
 ¶ Thus for þeir ire and fals dissencion  
 All þe lordes all þe chyualtrie  
 Wer slayn of Grece and also of þe town  
 And rote of all myn auctor wyl not lie  
 Was fals alliaunce of fraternall envie 3750  
 And the chefe grounde with al þe surplusage  
 Who so serche aright was vnkyndlie mariage ·  
 ¶ The Quene Iocasta felt hir parte of peine  
 To se hir chyldir iche sle oþer  
 Hir son hir lorde blynde of his ien tweyne  
 Which to his sonnes was fadir *and* eke broþer  
 ffortune wolde it shuld be non oþer  
 Eke *parcas* sistres which be in noumbre .iij.  
 Spanne so the threde at þeir natiuite ·  
 ¶ Eke when Iocasta stode þus disconsolate 3760  
 And sawe of Thebes þe subuersion  
 The cuntre destruyd was and desolate  
 The gentil blode shed of þat region



Withoute comfort or consolacion  
 Thof she myght no more be appeyrid  
 But of all hope fully despeired  
 ¶ Triste and hevy · pensyue and spake no worde  
 Hir sorow olde · and newe she can aduerte  
 Toke þe swerd of hym þat was hir lorde  
 With which Edippus smote Laius to þe herte 3770  
 She to finish all hir peynys smerte  
 And fro the bodie hir soule to diuide  
 [R]ove herself þurgh oute oþer syde  
 ¶ She wery was of hir woful lyfe  
 Seyng of fortune þe grete frowardnes  
 Hough hir fame *and* sclaunder was so ryfe ·

**[14v, col. b]**

And of Edippus þe grete wrechidnes  
 Eke of hir sonnes þe grete vnkyndnes  
 All þeis thynges weyed on hir so sore  
 ffor distresse þat she liste lyve no more 3780  
 ¶ Thus deth deuoureth with his bittyr gall 3788  
 Ioy and sorowe avoide of all mercy  
 And with his darte he makith down to fall 3790  
 Riche and pore þem merkyng sodenlie  
 His vnware stroke smert indifferentlie  
 ffrom hym refusyng fauour and all mede  
 Of all estates so lityl he takith hede  
 ¶ Bettyr is to die þen lyfe in wrechidnes  
 Bettyr is to die þen euer to lyve in peyn  
 Bettyr is an ende þen dedlie hevynes  
 Bettyr is to die þen euer in wo compleine  
 And wher as myschef doth at folkys disd[eyne]  
 By woful constreint of longe continuan[ce] 3800  
 Better is to die þen lyve in such grevau[nce]  
 ¶ Taketh example her of and a preve  
 Of kyng Edippus þat was so longe ago  
 Of Quene Iocasta þat felt so grete myschefe  
 And of þeir chyldrenn remembre eke also  
 Which euer lyved in Envie sorow and wo  
 ffortune alas duryng all þeir dayes  
 Was founde so frowarde to þem at all assayes  
 ¶ Touchyng Edippus processe fynde I noon 3810  
 Whate ende he made in conclusioun  
 Saue Bochas writith hough þe kyng Creon  
 Cosyn and ayre by succession  
 Exilid hym cheynynd ferre oute of þe town  
 Wher he indurid in sorow myschef and drede

Tyll ~~Attrapos~~ ^Antrapos^ vntwynyd hys lyves threde

¶ In this tragedie .iiij. thynges ye may se  
The pride of Iabin and fals presumpcion  
Of Quene Iocasta the grete aduersite  
Of kynge Edippus þe inclinacion  
To vices all and þe diuision

3820

Off the .ij. brethern pleyndie vs assure  
Kyngdoms diuidid may no while indure  
¶ ffor who sawe euer kyngdom or cuntre ·  
Stonde in quiete of þeir possession  
But yf þer were · right pees and equite  
And iuste acorde withoute dissension  
Voide of vntrouth and fals collusion

Pleyndly declaryng by example of scripture  
Kyngdamez diuidid may no while indure ·

3829

¶ Princis princesses which haue þe souereignete  
Ouer þe peple and dominacion

3837

If ye list lyue longe in felicitye  
Cherish youre subiectes doth non extorcion  
And aduertiseth of wysdom and t reson  
As þis Tragedie doth in yow discure  
Kyngdamez diuidid may no while indure ·

3840

**De casu Thiestes filij philistenes Regis**

BOchas þe poet auctor of þis booke  
Hym purposyng togydyr to compile  
Diuerse stories anon his penne he toke  
Hym remembryng within a lityl while  
In this Chapitle can directe his stile  
To write þe storie *and* began compendius

**[15r, col. a]**

[A]fforn all oþer of Duke Theseus

3850

¶ [Lo]rde of Athenes a famus grete Cite  
[Ri]ght stronge and myghty on euery syde  
[B]ut at his bak Bochas did oon see  
[W]hich cryed lowde and bad he shuld abide  
[B]ochas *quod* he fro þe me liste not hyde  
[M]y woful caas nor in no wyse spare  
[M]y pitevus compleinte to þe to declare  
¶ [I] am Thiestes besprende all with wepyng  
[D]rownyd in teris as þu maiste well se  
[W]hilom son of the myghty kynge  
[P]hilistenes and borne also *par* dieu  
Of Quene Pellopia excellyng of beaute  
[A]nd for þu arte ~~desy~~ desirus for to write  
Of peple vnhappye and þeire wo to indite

3860

¶[M]y will is this anon þat þu procede  
[To] turne þi stile and take þi penne blyve  
[Le]fe Theseus take now of hym non hede  
[B]ut my Tragedie fyrst þat þu descriue  
ffor I suppose þat in all þi lyue  
þu sawe neuer a thyng more dolorous 3870  
More vnhappy more þe pitevous  
¶Then is alas myn mortall aventure  
Incomparable þe sorowgh suremountyng  
Of Quene Iocasta moste wofull creature  
Or of Edippus his fate ay compleynyng  
ffor my compleinte hath noon endyng  
But lastith euer and berith me witnes  
No wo resembler vnto myn hevynes  
¶And with þat worde Iohn Bochas styll stode  
fful sobrelie to gyve hym audience 3880  
In the place demurelie he aboode  
To here þe substaunce of his mortall offence  
Which þus began to shew his sentence  
O Iohn *quod* he I pray the take goode hede  
My wo to write þat men may it rede  
¶Alas my broþer rote of vnkyndnes  
Attreus · callid of treson sours and well  
And founder oute of treson and falsnes  
And all oþer in fraude he doth precell  
Who couert his hate more þen I can tell 3890  
I supposyng of verrei Innocencie  
In hym no malice deceit ne non offence  
¶But as a broþer shuld a broþer truste  
I trustyd hym of herte wyll and thought  
By apparence non oþer cause I wyste  
ffor in his *person* I supposid nought  
þat euer he couth of fals a thyng haue wrought  
But who may sonner anoþer man deceyve  
þenn he in whome no malice doth conceyve  
¶I dempte of hym as of my true broþer 3900  
Wenyng he hadde feithfull ben to me  
I sawe no signe nor I know noon oþer  
In hym supposing no duplicate  
But O alas who myght it euer be  
Or who did euer in eny storie fynde  
Bloode vnto bloode to be so vnkynd  
¶I wyl passe ouer and tell þe worthines  
Touchyng þe astates of oure progenitoures  
Of oure kynred and þe grete nobles  
I telle no þing nor of oure predecessoures 3910

Nor of my youth hough passid ben þe floures  
I leue all þis and vnto mynde call  
The wrechidnes þat am in fall  
¶ My broþer founde as fals occasion  
Agayn me *and* gan a cause feine

[15r, col. b]

To banysh me oute of oure region  
And at me of hatred so disdeigne  
Vpon me affermyng in certeine  
In oure Kyngdam which callid is Missene  
I shuld haue leyn by his wyf þe quene 3920  
¶ Thus he compassid falslie of malice  
Hymself knowyng wele þat it was not so  
Ay founde vnkynd and in his advise  
Not lyke my broþer but my dedelie foo  
And to increce grete parcell of my wo  
By longe processe in his intencion  
He imagenyd my destruccion  
¶ And his chefe cause was fals couetise  
Touchyng þis thyng which he did on me feyne  
And yit this Kyngdam trulie to devise 3930  
Shuld haue be departid of right betwen vs tweine  
But agayn truthe he did so ordeigne  
Me to imbesile oute of þat region  
Hymself allon to haue possession  
¶ Yit in his hert he caste anoþer wyle  
To myn vndoyng and desolacion  
To þe place where he did me exile  
Vndir a shadow of his fals collusion  
To make a maner reuocacion  
Of broþerhede shewyng a pretence 3940  
Me to resorte agayn to his presence  
¶ To be acceptid as a broþer shulde  
With full acorde styll with hym to byde  
All Iniurius of which afforn I tolde  
On eyther forgete and set aside  
That nothyng aftyr shuld oure loue diuide  
But of oon wyll and oon intencioun  
Lede all oure lyfe withoute diuisioun  
¶ Wher þe peple was ful gladde and light  
Thurghoute Missene þe myghty region 3950  
And my resortyng foundyng euery wyght  
Redy of hert and hole affeccioun  
Me to receyve into þat noble townn  
And noon so redy by signes oute shewyng

To make me chere in soth as was þe kyng  
 ¶ Ther is no damage in comparisoun  
 That may be lykenyd by no resemblaunce  
 To feynyð trouth and simulacioun  
 When fraude is hid with a fayre countenaunce  
 Pretendyng trouth outward by ~~des~~ deceyvaunce 3960  
 And vndirneath of most fals intende  
 Of doublenes dareth þe Serpent ·  
 ¶ Also vndir floures is shadowyd þe dragon  
 ffor to betraish by soden violence  
 Such folke as haue no suspicion  
 But trulie mene in þe pore Innocencie  
 Tyl they be caught dispurveid of defence  
 As is a fysh with baite of fals plesaunc[e]  
 The hoke not seen to bryng þem to mis[chaunce]  
 ¶ This sembleable at myn home commyng 3970  
 I was receyvid with euery circumstaunce  
 Lyk as halfe eire and broþer to þe kyng  
 And þe pretendyng as by countenaunce  
 That he hadde ~~an~~ inlie so grete plesaun[ce]  
 Of my repayre of trouth he told s[o]  
 ffor reioysyng sayde he wolde go  
 ¶ Vnto his goddes to do summ obseruaunc[e]  
 ffor þis acord and humble sacrifice

**[15v, col. a]**

Made his ministers with faithfull intendaunce  
 To waite on me in all þeire beste wyse 3980  
 Hit nedith not to tell or devise  
 Nor in bokys in wrytyng for te set  
 Halfe the ioy he made when me met  
 ¶ ffirst hough frendlie he did me enbrace  
 Of hertlie gladnes within his h armys tweine  
 And hough for ioy þe terys on his face  
 fful entierlie gan down distill *and* e reyne  
 þat for my partie I couth me not restreyne  
 But þat I muste of frenship fraternall  
 Wepe as did he in his estate royall 3990  
 ¶ The wylde wolfe þat caste hym to devoure  
 The selie lambe which can no defens  
 Nor no helpe his selfe to socoure  
 So feble he his to make resistens  
 Which demith trouth of fals apparence  
 What wondir is it · þe fraude not conceivid  
 Thof such lambes vnwarlie be deceyvid  
 ¶ Thof þat roses at mydsomer be ful swet

*þat* vndirneth is hidde a ful sharpe spine  
 Som fresh floures haue a ful bittyr rote 4000  
 And lothsom galle can sugir eke vndirmyne  
 In dredefull stormys *þe* sunne emong doth shyne  
 And vndir a shadow of feynynd frendlied  
*þer* is no frenship so *perilus* for to drede ·  
 ¶ Thus remembryng *þe* feithful wordes stable  
 Of my bro*þer* þus shewyd vnto me  
 At oure metyng *þe* kyssyng amiable  
 The assuryng countenaunce of oure fraternite  
 But oft tyme men may beholde and se  
 That lillies grow emong þis netlis thyk 4010  
 And floure delice emong *þe* wedys wyk  
 ¶ This while I restyd in *þe* kynges house  
 Nothyng coniectyng his dedlie cruelte  
 His old hatred was so venemus  
 And so odible to destroie me  
 Hymselfe to avenge he toke my chyldre thre  
 And secretlie is it not a wondir  
 He cut þeir throtes with a knyfe asondre  
 ¶ ffor he thought *þat* it did hym goode  
 þem to dismember into pecys small 4020  
 And a vesel to gadyr <sup>^in^</sup> þeir bloode  
 While þei lay styll and lokyd on hym ful pale  
 This was his dede in a deserte vale  
 Within a cave *þat* no man hym shuld asprie  
 Treson conspired of his fals innocencie  
 ¶ This was *þe* substance of his sacrifice  
 To sle my chyldren and do þeire throtes blede  
 I trowe *þe* goddys þerof did agrise  
 Of his fals offryng when þei toke hede  
 He did þeir membris aftyr roste and sethe 4030  
 And with þis viande moste abhominable  
 He made me be *serued* at *þe* table ·  
 ¶ In covert confis also þus hit stode  
 To staunch my thirste þurgh his cruel vengeaunce  
 He made me vnknowe drynk þeir blode  
 Was not this thyng to goddes displeaunce  
 This dare I sey for demonstraunce  
 Vpon this dede withoute more obstacle  
 The sunne in hevyn shewyd a miracle  
 ¶ Which sor agrisid myght not beholde 4040  
 With his bemys þeron to caste his sight  
 ffor displeaunce his clerenes gan withholde  
 [A]nd for vengeaunce to withdrawe his light  
 [The] day turnyng for erreure into nyght

[15v, col. b]

When I he shon brightist in his myd spere  
Shrowyd his face and wold not appere

¶ But alas vpon þis case horrible  
That couth not imagine nor oþer thyng  
On eny matier þat was so odible  
Ete of þeir flesh þeir blood ek did I dryn[k]  
Which so sore doth to myn hert synk  
þat I not touchyng þis aventure  
The circumstance for constreint discure

4050

¶ It nedith not to make rehersaile  
Touchyng myn exile of all maner thyng  
Of diuerse sorowys þat me did assaile  
My wofull sighes my dolorus wakyng  
My pouerte nor I · hough I stode in drede  
To lese my lyfe wher Bochas take hede ·

4057/4058

4059

4060

¶ And remembre þ all þe circumstancez  
If euer þu sawe of high or lawe degre  
More contrarie or more vnhappy chauncez  
þen þu herd remembred her of me  
Wey in balaunce my sorowes *and* let se  
If eny sorowe and mischefe vnrecurid  
May countrepeyse I to þat I haue indurid

¶ Myn vnfortunes I fonde þem ay so fell  
Withoute fauour and socoure dispurveide  
My broþer euer on me so cruell  
þat I ful ofte desyred to haue died  
ffor to þis day my spirit hath ben coverid  
With sorow and wo deuoid of all refuge  
Wherfor I pray O Bachas to be my Iuge ·

4070

¶ And þis writyng leve me not behynd  
Nor in þi boke þu not disdeigne  
Amonge þoo folke þat þu haue me in mynde  
Which þat for sorow wepe waile *and* playne  
And thus Thiestes rehersyng of all his peyn  
Lyke as he wolde hymself on pecis rende  
Made vnto Bochas of his tale an ende

4080

¶ Attreus aftyr with a ful pale chere  
And of Enuy ful dede in his visage  
Vnto Iohn Bochas he gan approche nere  
Lyke as he hadde be fallen in a rage  
And furiuslie all voyde in his language  
Hough may this be þat lyke a man were wode  
Thiestes hath his venom sowe abrode

¶ And like a Rybaude falslie me accusid  
Notwithstoundyng þat I full ee clerlie se

4090

My infortunes which may not be refusid  
 So sor alas þei werke agayn me  
 And thof Thiestes fals and vntrue be  
 And vnto þe Bochas with a face pale  
 Agayn me hath forged her a tale ·  
 ¶ Which in effecte shal be found vntrue  
 If I haue space my compleint to declare  
 ffor I purpose to tell a tale newe  
 ffro poynte to poynte and for no man to spare  
 Hough he was rote of all my mortal care  
 And euen lyke as it is befall  
 Reherse þe begynnyng of my sorowez all  
 ¶ Whilom whan I reigned in Myssene  
 Of age lusty flourying in my freshnes  
 With my wyfe Europa þat was Quene  
 Moste renomed þat tyme of fayrnes  
 Thiestes þen as ground of all falsnes  
 As a traytour his tyme did espie  
 Thurgh his false fraude and his flaterie ·  
 ¶ Compassyd a mene within my Cite  
 By sleight · wylez þat were incomparable  
 To corrupte my wyvys chastite ·

4100

4110

**[16r, col. a]**

[M]y bedde defylyng a thyng intollerable  
 [A]nd to þe goddys verrey abhominable  
 [V]syng the Quene þat by continuaunce  
 [¶S]he by hym hadde sonnes ʒ ij. or thre  
 [Ich]on brought forth in fals avoutre  
 [D]emyng þat þei hadde be  
 [My]n own children tyll þat I dide espie  
 [Ho]ugh þat þis swyne thurgh his fals lecherie  
 [Th]is Thiestes aftyr Europa  
 [La]y by his doughtyr callid Pellopia  
 [¶A]nd by processe forth a chylde she brought  
 [C]allid Egistus which when he com to age  
 [A]s saith Bochas ful grete treson he wrought  
 [F]or by his malice and his grete outrage  
 [D]estruyd was all holy þe linage  
 [O]f Tantalus which by his lyvyng  
 [In] Phrigia reignyd as lorde and Kynge  
 [¶B]ut þis Egistus of whom I spake befor  
 [Fa]lslye bygete · myn auctour writeth þe same  
 [O]f Pellopia anon as he was born  
 To hyde þe sclaunder *and* also þe defame  
 Of Thiestes and for to saue his name

4115/4116

4117

4120

4130



When þat he was but a day of age  
 He was oute caste to bestys ful savage  
 ¶ To be devourid þe storie is wel couth  
 A mylche goote godde liste for hym provide  
 To fostre hym in his tendir youth 4140  
 He nyght nor day lyggyng by hir syde 4141  
 Vnto þe tyme he did abyde þat ^he^ did growe in age 4143  
 Þen to þe courte he holdith his passage 4144  
 Within þe forest þus he did abide 4142  
 ¶ As vnknown to euery maner wyght 4145  
 Where he herde abydyng in howsholde  
 Of his kynred and agayn all right 4147  
 Thiestes was presumptuous and bolde 4148  
~~By his kynred and agayn all right 4147~~  
~~Thiestes was presumptuous and bolde 4148~~  
 By his deceites compassid manyfolde  
 With Europa my wyfe to haue ado 4150  
 And on Pellopia begate a child also  
 ¶ Which was hymself as he did vndirstond  
 By euidencez · many mo þen oon  
 Wherfore of malice falslie toke on holde  
 On me his vncle to avengid be anon  
 ffor Thiestes chefest of all my foon  
 Myn own broþer made Egistus blynde bliue  
 To make a swerde thurghoute my hert deyne  
 ¶ Thus by this mordre conspired by te treson  
 Vn Attreus liggyng pale and dede 4160  
 Cam Thiestes to haue possession  
 And set a crown vniustlie on his hede  
 He nethir hadde conscience nor drede  
 Routhles to se my woundes blede  
 With this þat he myght inȝ my lande succede  
 ¶ This same Egistus ful falslie in his lyfe  
 As a yonge braunch spronge oute of treson  
 Lay by Chimestra which was þe wyfe  
 Of the noble worthi Kyng Agamenon  
 Leyyng a Seege to noble Troye þe town 4170  
 And þis Egistus which is a thyng no feyre  
 Mordred hym also in Grece at his repeyre  
 ¶ Wherfor O bochas of hert I pray þe  
 Whiez of þis stories is now moste terrible  
 Of Edippus Iocasta · or of me  
 Tell on anon yf it be possible  
 Which of theis sorowes is founde most peynible  
 Of þeban breþern moste full of wo and tene  
 Or of vs tweine breþerne of Missene

[16r, col. b]

¶ I am aknow as for my partie 4180  
Of vengeaunch I did a cruell dede  
I slowe his childyrn of malice and Envie  
And rostyde them when þat þei were dede  
Onlie bycause yf þu list take heede  
That he begate þem as rote of all þis stryfe  
Vpon Europa which þat was my wyfe  
¶ Such hatefull thynges yche man shuld lothe 4187  
Thus may I sey we be vnhappy bothe 4189  
He fyrste by trespas of fornicacion 4190  
Doon by the Quene within my region  
And I disclaundird on the oþer syde  
Of hasty vengeaunce to be an homicide  
¶ My bedde he fylde by his avoutrie  
To godde and man a thyng moste detestable 4195  
This interchaungyng yf it be commendable 4198  
Eche was desirus thurgh oure vnhappy chaunce 4199  
And yf I of malice *and* fals melancolie 4196  
Slough his chyl dren *and* seruyd þem at þe table 4197  
Vpon oþer for to do vengeaunce 4200  
¶ Oure grete hated moste odious found at all  
Oure cruell dedys wrought on ethir syde  
Senec rehersith þem in especiall  
In his Tragedies and þer he doth diuide  
Oure compleyntes and malice and oure pride  
Oure fatall ende in sorow *and* myschef endid  
When Antropos oure lyvys threde hath twynyd  
¶ When Iohn Bochas fully hadde espyed  
Of þeis .ij. breþern þe ~~accusaci~~ <sup>accusaci</sup>ons  
And hough þei hadde maliciuslie replied 4210  
Iche agayn oþer in þeir dissencions  
He gan to dulle to here þeir mocions  
Put vp his penne *and* wrote no more a worde  
Of þeir furie nor of þeir fals discorde ·  
¶ This Tragedie sheweth a figure  
A maner Image and also a liknes  
Hough contrarie it is vnto nature  
Bloode vnto bloode to shewe vnkyndnes  
This wofull storie can bere full well witnes  
All such debates ben as ye shal fynde 4220  
Hatfull to godde and contrarie to kynde  
¶ ffor þer is no more dredeful aventure  
Then in kynred to fynde frowardnes  
ffor ^Nor^ no damage · more *perilus* to indure  
Then in frenships when þer is straungenes

A maner ~~ex~~ partie by example I dare ~~dresse~~ expresse  
 To se the tre · debate agayn the rynde  
 To godde were hatfull and contrarie to kynde  
 ¶ Euery beste and euery creature  
 Loveth his sembleable of kynd right as I gesse 4230  
 And when vntrouth tweine hertes insure  
 Ondepartid of verrey parfitnes  
 It were a vicius froward ouersidnes  
 Their love to vnknyt to louse or vnbynde  
 Hateful to godde and contrarie to kynde  
 ¶ Princis princesses doth youre bysy cure  
 ffor yowe to avoide stryfe fraude and doublenes  
 Remembre yow vpon þe vnhappy eure  
 Of þeis .ij. brethirn and of þeir wrecchidnes  
 And of þeir both malicius wylfulnes 4240  
 And þeir stryves · haue þis well in mynde  
 To godde was hatfull *and* contrarie vnto kynd[e]

---

[17v, col. a43]

**Exhortacio moralis ad principes ·**

All þat so be in euery maner age  
 ffolkys ben diuerse of þeir condicions  
 To turne · plie · and chaunge in þeir corage 4560  
 On oþer partie with soden mocions  
 And for to bowe by transmutacions  
 With euery wynd as doon þe vnstable levys  
 Which hange on trees in forestes and in grevez  
 ¶ But off all chaunges is moste to drede  
 And moste ferfull is þat variaunce  
 When þat princes which may þe peple lede  
 Be founde vnstable in þeir governaunce  
 ffor þeir nobles and þeire puissaunce  
 Assureth hem by a maner forme 4570  
 Whateuer þem liste to accomplissh and performe  
 ¶ To comyn profite þei may most avayle  
 When þei be rulid by wisdom and reson  
 And to þe peple þei may moste disavaile  
 When þei lake wit and discrecion  
 þus between tweine in euery region  
 þe peple drawith who þat can discerne  
 To goode or badde as princes þem gouerne  
 ¶ [Þ]ei may not be hasty nor soden  
 But do all þing by gode advisment 4580  
 [Ke]p[e] þem from tonges þat partid be on tweine  
 [N]ot be to rakill to yeue no Iugement

[A]nd of no folkys when þey be absent  
[Le]ue no talez nor yeue no credence  
[Tyll] þat þe partie may com to audience

[17v, col. b]

¶ Somwhile hath happid hough þat slowe credence  
Hath in som cas be founde full noyus  
But hasty credence I dare say in sentence  
A thousand folde is more perilus  
ffor vnavised all haste is odius 4590  
ffor haste full oft for lakkyng of reson  
Of mych peple hath be destruccioun  
¶ Ther is no damage þat men can purpose  
More to be dredde nor more lamentable  
Ben a prince his eres to onclose  
To euery tale and to euery fable  
It is a token þeire hertes be not stable  
When þei to flaterers þeir eres so applie  
Namlie to such þat can well forge and lie  
¶ ffolkes ben diuerse · som fals som trewe 4600  
In diuers studies do þeire bysynes  
Som can labour to fynde oute talez newe  
And som for lucre can maintene well falsnes  
And holde vp querels againe rightuesnes  
Pretendyng trouth vndir a fals intent ·  
To hyndre folkes which þat ben Innocent  
¶ Men to suppose it were a grete folie  
þat folkes shuld in their opinion  
Speke or pronounce all on o partie  
Or holde o wey in þeir entencioun 4610  
ffor sembleable as þer is diuisioun  
Of corages of high and lowe degre  
So is þer trulie a grete diuersite  
¶ In rehersaile or reporte of a thyng  
ffor to his parte yche man is fauorable  
Som man can say well in his rehersyng  
Som man is double and som deceyvable  
Som men say trouth and som be variable  
Wherefore a prince of right as it doth seme  
Shuld well examine afforn or þat he deme 4620  
¶ ffor þer is no more dredeful pestilence  
Ben is a tonge þat can flater and fage  
ffor with his cursid crokid violence  
He infectith folke of euery maner age  
Woo to tonges froward of þeir language  
And woo to tonges · fals · furius and woode ·

Which of no *persone* neuer sey goode  
 ¶Bochas rehersith it is well sitting  
*þat* euery man othir do commend  
 And say *þe* best alway in reportyng 4630  
 ffor in wele sayyng no man may offende  
 Wher men say well godde wyll his *grace* sende  
 Aftyr men be · men muste *þeir pris* vpreyse  
 Aftyr *þeir merites* allow[e] *þem* or dispreise  
 ¶But wher a thyng is v[t]tyrlie vnknowe  
 Lete no man *þer* be hasty of sentence  
 ffor rightful Iuges sitting on a rowe  
 Of *þeir wysdome* and of *þeir high prudence*  
 Wyl of trouth haue fyrste som euidence  
 I mene such as governd be by grace 4640  
 Or eny dome forth by *þeir lyp pys* passe  
 ¶A prince shulde assemble thynges tweyne  
 Within hymself afforn ful prudentlie  
 Sett hys domes faste with a myghty cheyne  
 On of *þe soule reson* for *þat* partie  
 Prudence choos oute and right for *þe bodie*  
 And betwen both or he yeve a sentence  
 To counsel call trouth and goode conscience  
 ¶ffyrste to considre with euery circumstance  
 And diligentlie do *þeron* his labour 4650  
 Off discrecion to take *þe balaunce*  
 And fyrste wey oute who is *þe accuser*

[18r, col. a]

And whedir he for falsnes or fauour  
 In his processe liste to procede  
 Hereof a prince muste of right take hede  
 ¶He muste also considre by and bye  
 What *þat* he is which to hym is accusid  
 And whedir *þe accuser* be frende or enimie  
 Or whedir he shall be acceptid or refusid  
 In his actes *þis* muste afforn be musid 4660  
 And whedir he be by reporte of his name  
 A man wele noysid or slaundyrd by diffame  
 ¶Yf Theseus hadde þus ben advisid  
 And considred of reson *þe maner*  
 He had not so hastylie devisid  
 His sonnes deth lyke as ye shall leere  
 ffor yf *þer* hadde assemblid ben in fere  
 In his *persone* prudence and reson  
 He shulde haue seen in his discrecion  
 ¶By knowlegyng of longe experience 4670

Of his wyfe þe grete vnstedfastnes  
 Which thurgh his frowarde compassid eloquence  
 Was redy euer to bryng folke to distresse  
 And in his wrytyng Bochas berith witnes  
 Of þeir nature women can flater and fage  
 And be somwhile to copius of þeir langage  
 ¶Also of wysdome þis duke Theseus  
 Shulde haue considird afor his intende  
 Hough þat his son callid Ipolitus  
 Of all onclennes was founde ay Innocent 4680  
 And hough þat he of custome made his went  
 Into forestes duryng his yonge age  
 To hunte at bestes which þat were sauage  
 ¶Rennyng on foote as shal vndirstonde  
 On hylles valeis to eschewe idilnes  
 Modir of vices with his bowe in hand  
 Diane to serue of huntyng chefe goddes  
 Somtyme to hauke he did his bysynes  
 Eke vnto fysshying he gretlie was applied  
 So þat his youth was neuer vnoccupied 4690  
 ¶Thus he lyvyd in wodys solitarilie  
 And of Venus despysid the seruise  
 Among women he wolde neuer tary  
 Theire feleship he did allwey despise  
 ffor he dempte by sentence of þe wyse  
 Who touchith pych by assay men may wel se  
 It fayleth not he shal defylid be  
 ¶Ipolitus sawe well þis thyng befor  
 Kepte at large from such contrariuste  
 His grene youth he wold no wey haue lorne 4700  
 To be defowlid for lak of chastite  
 ffor he levyd euer in virginite  
 And neuer did Bochas wyl not varie  
 Nothyng þat was vnto godde contrarie  
 ¶Thus of intent he kepte his bodie clene  
 Duryng his lyfe both in thought and dede  
 Whos modir was Ipolita þe Quene  
 Of Amazones in Ouide ye may rede  
 But o alas þat Theseus toke hede  
 ffor a tale of phedra ful of gyle 4710  
 Withoute gylt his son to exhile  
 ¶Aftyr whos deth som poetis seyn  
 Hough þat diana for his chastite  
 Restorid hym vnto lyve agayn  
 By Esculapius and gaue hym liberte  
 In hir forestes to hunte and to go fre

ffor which restoryng as write Ouidius  
As twys a man men calle hym virbius

[18r, col. b]

¶ But Bochas here I not what he doth mene  
Maketh in his booke an exclamacion 4720  
Agayns women þat pite is to seene  
Seith hough þeir lyfe þeir generacion  
Bene of nature double of condicion  
And callith þem eke diuerse and vnstable  
Bestis resemblyng þat been insaciable  
¶ He menyth of women þat been born in Crete  
Nothyng of them þat dwelle in þis cuntre  
ffor women here all doublenes þei lete  
And haue no tache of mutabilite  
Pei loue no chaunges nor no duplicite 4730  
ffor þeir husbondes in causes small or grete  
Whateuer þei seyn þei can not counturplete  
¶ Blessid be godde þat hath þem made so meke  
So humble and feithfull of þeir condicions  
ffor þof men wolde cause and matier seke  
Agayn þeir paciens to fynd occasions  
They haue refusid all contradiccions  
And them submittyd þurgh þeir gouernaunce  
Onlie to mekness and womanlie suffraunce  
¶ I speke off all · I speke not off oon 4740  
Pat ben professid vnto lowlines  
Pey may haue Mouthes but langage haue þei noon  
All true husbondes can bere herof witnes  
ffor weddid men I dare right well expresse  
Pat haue assayed and haue experience  
Best can recorde of wyfelie paciens  
¶ ffor as it longeth to men to be sturdie  
And somewhat frowarde as of þeir nature  
Ryght so can women suffre pacientlie  
And all wronges humble endure 4750  
Men shuld attempte no maner creature  
And namelie women þeir meknes to repreue  
Which may well suffre while no man þem greve  
¶ Euerych þing resortith to his kynde  
As Bochas writeth somtyme of þe eyre  
And yit who serchith by processe he shall fynde  
Pat trouth and vertue may neuer fade of chere  
ffor rightuesnes wyl allway shyne clere  
Throuth falsnes in what pey haue to doon  
They may no while assemble in oon person 4760

¶ffeyth and flattery þei be contrarie  
They may togyddyr holde no soioure  
Nor simples chiche þat can not varie  
May neuer acorde with a baratoure  
ffor Innocence with a losenger  
Nor chastite can not hirsself applie  
Hir to conforme vnto no ribaudie  
¶Crafte and nature sewe þe profession  
By þe ordinaunce seet in þeir corage  
And yche man foloweth his condicion  
As of stokke þe frute hath his tarage  
Pylgrymes may go full ferre in þeir passage  
But I dare sey hough ferre þat euer þei goon  
þer bide som tarage of þat þei com frome

4770

¶Bochas maketh an Introduccion  
In this Chapitle of the high nobles  
That princes haue in þeir possession  
And by a maner lawghyng doth expresse  
Hough for to sette þem in grete surnes  
They haue *seruauntes* vpon them abydyng  
And day and nyght men of armes wayty[ng]  
¶That no man may entre but yf he haue l[icence]  
The froward portes stondyng at þe gat[e]  
Put men abake by sturdie violence  
It were full harde agayn to debate  
Ther wache is kepte both erly and late ·

4780

[18v, col. a]

And þem to assure on nyghtes when þei slepe  
The chaumbirleyns þeire dores streytlye kepe  
¶Men assigned þeir metes to assay  
To taste þeir wyne leste þer were tresoun  
Such mortall dedes þeis lordes doth affray  
So is þeire surnes meynt with suspeccion  
Who fedith þem gladlie þat fereth þem of poyson  
But pore folke fraunchysid ~~fro~~ from such drede  
Such as godde send with myrth þei þem fede  
¶But poetis þat write tragedies  
Their compleyng is all of high estates  
Rehersyng euer þeir pitevus Iopardies  
Their soden chaunges and þeir wylfull fates  
Their diuision and þeir mortall debates  
And ay conclude þeir dities who can rede  
Highest astates stonde moste in drede  
¶And grownd and rote of all þis mortal trouble  
As writeth Bochas *and* berith pleylnlie witnes

4790

4800



Be þeis liers with þeir tonges double  
 Þemself ay inforsyng to oppresse  
 With whome flaterie is a chef maistres  
 And werste of all to þeir dredful sentence  
 Is when princes ben hasty of credence  
 ¶ Hasty credence is rote of all erreure 4810  
 A frowarde stepmodre of all goode counsaile  
 Grounde of grete hyndryng a dredful deceyver  
 ffayre oft of face · with a foule perilus taylor  
 Gladlie concludyng with ful grete disavaile  
 Next neighbor vnto repentaunce  
 To all þat truste *and* haue in þeir plesaunce  
 ¶ Princis considreth hough in euery age  
 ffolkes be diuerse of þeir condicion  
 To plie and turne and chaunge in þeir corage  
 Yit is þer noon to myn opinion 4820  
 So dredefull chaunge and transmutacion  
 As chaunge of princes to yeve a Iugement  
 Or hasty credence withoute avisement  
 ¶ It is well founde a passyng grete damage  
 Knowe and experte in euery region  
 Thof a tale haue a fayre visage  
 It may include ful grete decepcioun  
 Hid vndir sugre gall and foule poyson  
 With a fresh face of double intendaunce  
 Yit yeveth no credence without avisement 4830  
 ¶ Lete folkes all be ware of þeir langage  
 Kepe þeir tonges from oblocucion  
 To hyndre or hurte by no maner of outeage  
 Preserue youre lippes from all detraccion  
 ffro chaumpartie and contradiccion  
 ffor lest þat fraude were founde in their entente  
 Ne yeveth no credence withoute avisement  
 ¶ Princis princesses of noble and high parage  
 Which haue lordship and dominacion  
 Voide them aside þat can flater and fage 4840  
 ffro tonges þat haue a tarage of treson  
 Stoppeth youre erys from þeir bitter sown  
 Beth circumspecte not hasty but prudent  
 And yeveth no credence withoute avisement  
**De casu Alithee Regine Callidonie**  
 When Bochas had shewyd his sentence  
 And declarid his opinion  
 Agayn them þat wer hasty of credence  
 [H]e gan anon make a digression  
 [ff]ro þat matier and of intencioun

[To] serche oute mo his purpos to continue

4850

[18v, col. b]

That were doun caste and hyndird by fortune

¶ And as hym thought he sawe a companie  
Of many worthie whiche to hym did appere  
And amonge all fyrste he did espye

Quene Alithea as she cam hym nere  
Al bedewyd hir face · and eke hir chiere  
With salt teres þat pite was to seene  
Which whilom was Callidonie the quene

¶ She was þe doughter of kyng Thesteus  
Weddid to oon Callidonie þe kyng  
Of chere and face apperyng ful pitevus  
Hir here to torne and frowardlie liggyng  
And in token also of compleynyng

4860

As write Bochas wherof he toke hede  
Blak was hir habite and al torent hir wede

¶ A son she hadde Melleaug he hight  
In erthe was þer noon fayrere for to se  
Ryght wel fauoured in euery manys sight  
And as I fynde at his natiuite

Present were þe fatal sistres · iij ·  
With þeir rokkes and gan to spynne faste  
And toke a bronde and into fyre it caste

4870

¶ And in þat oure þis was hir langage  
Touchyng þis chylde we ful acordid be  
And haue disposid þe terme eke of his age  
The space eke concludid of his destynye  
As longe tyme whoso liste to see  
Tyl this bronde emonge þe colys rede  
Be ful consumid into ashes dede

¶ But when Alithea aspyed þeir entente  
And conceyvid þe fyne of þeire sentence  
She rose hir vp and þe bronde she hente  
Oute of þe fyre with ful grete diligence  
Squenchid anon þe fyres violence ·

4880

The dome of Parchas she gan þer disobeie  
The bronde reseruyng vndir lok and kay

¶ Touchyng þe fadre of þis Melleauger  
Oeneus þus of hym I rede  
Hough he went and sought nye and ferre  
Goddess and Goddesses whoso liste take hede

4890

In hope oonlie to haue grete nede  
ffor to þem all poetis þus devyse  
Saue to diane he did sacrifice

¶ Wherof she myght in Indignacioun  
Caste she wolde on hymm avengid be  
Sent a bore into his region  
fful sauage and ful of crueltie  
Which devourid þe tre frute of many a tre  
And destroyed his cornys and his vynes  
That such scarste of vitaile *and* of wynes 4900

¶ Was in his lande vpon euery syde  
þat þe peple of necessite  
Compellid were amonge to *prouide*  
Som mene wey to saue þe cuntre  
And at þe laste þei condescendid be  
þat Melleaugor lusty of his corage  
Shuld chese with hymself fresh *and* yong of age  
¶ This dredful bore myghtyly to inchace  
And forth þei went ichonn devoyde of drede  
With rounde spers þei gan hym to manace 4910  
But Melleauger made fyrst his sidys rede  
And with a swerd þen smote of his hede  
Wherof þe cuntre was glad faynn  
And in þis wyse þe tusky bore was slaynn

[19r, col. a]

¶ Somme bookys tell of þis huntyng  
[P]at a ladie which was born in Arge  
[C]allid Athlanta doughter to þe kyng  
[T]o sle þe boore toke on hyr þe charge  
[An]d with an arowe ~~mag~~ made his woundes large  
[Ek]e in Ouide like as it is founde 4920  
[B]ecause þat she gave þe fyrste wounde  
[¶] Melleaug anon for a memorie  
[A]s he þat was hir own chose knyght  
[G]afe hir þe hede in tokyn of þe victorie  
[B]ut his tweine vncles agayn all skyl *and* right  
[R]afte hir þe hede of verrey force and myght  
[Ha]vyng despite þat she in hir advise  
[O]f þis victorie shulde bere away þe price  
[¶] With which Iniurie Melleauger was wroth  
[A]gayn þem proudlie gan disdeigne 4930  
[P]ullid oute a swerd and vpon þem he goth  
[A]nd þurgh his manhode he slough his vncles tweine  
[A]nd after þat he did his bysy peyne  
To take þe hede and with ful humble intent  
To Athlanta agayn it to presente  
¶ Oon of his vncles was callid flexippus  
A manlie knyght and but yonge of age

That oþer broþer named Theseus  
 But when þeir Sistre herd of þis outrage  
 Hough þei were slayn she gan in hir visage 4940  
 Wex dede pale alas for lakke of bloode  
 When she aspyed þe cause hough þat it stode  
 ¶She hadde no matier godde to be fayn  
 Quene Althea to stonde and to beholde  
 Hir brethern tweine of hir son slayn  
 At þe huntyng of which befor I tolde  
 ffyrste thynges tweine she gan peyse *and* vnfolde  
 Of hir brethern þe loue and nygh kynred  
 And of hir son þe hasty cruel dede  
 ¶And remembryng she castith in a balaunce 4950  
 Of hertlie wo þat she did indure  
 Thought yf she dide vpon þeir deth vengeance  
 To sle hir son it were agayn nature  
 Thus longe in a dwere she did indure  
 Hir dedlie sorowe peysyng euerydee  
 Whedir þat she shal be tendre or cruell  
 ¶This tendir y mene hir son for to spare  
 Or punish þe deth of hir breþern tweine  
 þus counfortles all destitute and bare  
 In languishyng she indureth forth hir peyn 4960  
 And remedie can she non ordeigne  
 Saue fayn she wolde avenge hir yf she may  
 But þen cam nature forth and sayde nay  
 ¶It was hir son all kyndlie right  
 On whom caste avengid for to be  
 To women all an outhlie straunge sight  
 þat a modir devoide of all pite  
 Shulde sle hir chylde so merciles pardie  
 Nay nay not so nature wyl not assent  
 ffor yf she did ful sore shuld she repent 4970  
 ¶But o allas all fatall purveaunce  
 Kepith his course as *summe* clerkys sayn  
 But þe wrytyng of doctours in substance  
 And þus diuines replie þer agayn  
 And afferme þat þe opinion is veine  
 Of þem þat truste on fate or destynye  
 ffor godde above hath þe souereignete  
 ¶And of fortune þe power may restreyne  
 To saue or spyll lyke as folke discerue  
 Agayn his wyll þei may nothyng ordeigne 4980  
 Of necessite what course þat concerue  
 But þis matier all holy I reserue  
 Vnto diuines to *termine* and conclude

Which nat perteineth vnto folkys rude ·

[19r, col. b]

¶ But Althea of Callidonie quene  
Gan sore muse and hyng in a balaunce  
Hir breþern deth · when she did þem seene  
þen was she mevid anon to do vengeance  
Vpon hir son by ful grete displeaunce  
But as poetis liste to compile 4990  
Nature made hir withdrawe hir hande a while

¶ Thus atwen Ire and atwen affeccion  
She helde hir longe on nowthir *partie* stable  
Tyl þat she caught in hir opinioun  
A sodein rancure which made hir be vengeable  
And hasty wrath is not commendable  
Agayn hir son with hir cursid hande  
Oute of þe chest to take þe fatal bronde  
¶ And sodenlie she caste it in þe fyre · 5000  
And cruel wex agayn all womanhede  
To execute hir venemus desire  
The fatal bronde among þe flames brode  
Consumid was into asshes dede  
And furiuslie in hir melancolie  
The vengeance doon þus she can to crie

¶ O ye parchas froward sistres thre  
Which of yow kepen þe librarie  
And of children at þeir natiuite  
Waite þe sentence which þat must varie  
Wherso it be · welful or contrarie 5010  
Vpon his domes takyng allwey hede  
Hough þat ye shal dispose þat fatall threde ·  
¶ Thow Cloto takys þi rokke on hand  
And ~~after~~ lachesis after doth begynne  
By grete advise who can vndrestond  
The threde on length to drawe and to spynne  
But when þe spirit shal fro þe body twynne  
þu Autropos doste þi cruell peyne  
fful frowardlie to parte þe threde in tweynn

¶ I may wel pleyn on such departison 5020  
Not for a day but alas foreuer  
Ye haue vntwynyd and made diuision  
Of my · ij · breþern *and* causid them disseuer  
þat þem alyve I shal se neuer  
And I of haste alas why did I so  
To avenge þeir deth haue slayn my son also

¶ O ye ~~the~~ thre doughtres of herebus þe fell

Whos outhlie modre was þe blak nyght  
 And all youre kynred and linage lie in helle  
 And for to avenge þe wronge *and* grete vnright 5030  
 Which þat I haue accompassid in youre sight  
 I wyl with yow perpetuellie compleynn  
 Lyke my deserte endure sorow and peyne ·  
 ¶ And while she gan with herself þus stryfe  
 Vpon hir sorowes þat were endles  
 She made a swerd þurghoute hir herte ryve  
 Of herself · her she was so recles  
 And Bochas aftyr among all þe pres  
 Saw as hym thought with a full hidduus chere  
 Dede of visage Hercules appere 5040  
 ¶ Whos fadre was Iubiter þe grete  
 His modir doughter of kyng Amphitrion  
 Callid Alcumena somtyme born in Crete  
 And as poetis rehersen on by on  
 So excellent was þere neuer noon  
 To speke of conquest of victorie and fame  
 Her in þis worlde þat hadde so grete a n[ame]  
 ¶ Dredful of loke he was and right terribl[e]  
 His berde eke blake which hyng ful low ad[on]  
 And of his here as bristill was horrible 5050  
 His roobe also ful mervelus of faccion  
 Was of a skynne of a fers lion  
 Which from his bak of verrey force h[e rente]  
 Within a forest allon whan he wen[te]  
 ¶ In his hande he bare a mace of stel[e]  
 Which to beholde was wondir large [*and* huge]

**[19v, col. a]**

By apparence as Bochas felt well  
 Dempthe of reson as a rightful Iuge  
 That Hercules hadde to his refuge  
 Wysdom with force for to increce his fame 5060  
 All bestys wylde for to make þem tame  
 ¶ And vnto Bochas he gan lowde crie  
 Take right goode hede for it is no fable  
 I for my merites to speke of Chyualrie  
 And nobles triumphes and moste commendable  
 To be preferrid moste worthy and moste able  
 Which haue accomplishid all þat may excell  
 Thurgh hygh prowes þat eny tonge can tell  
 ¶ Eke of my byrth in heuyn ful yore age  
 ffully conceyvid my constellation 5070  
 Myghty Ioue saide vnto Iuno

On such aday in such a regioun  
 On shal be born most mighty of renoun  
 Noblest of nobles both in werre and pees  
 Of whom þe name shal be Hercules  
 ¶ The which dome when Iuno vndirstode  
 Of Iubiter conceyvyng þe entent  
 And knewe my fate shulde be so goode  
 To lucina hir messenger she sente  
 But som say hough doun herself she wente 5080  
 To þis Goddes · Goddes of chyldyng  
 And hir besought to *graunte* hir · hir asking  
 ¶ That she wolde frome Hercules translate  
 The influence of his natiuite  
 Helpe to reforme his fame *and* eke his fate  
 And *graunte* it holy to yonge Euriste  
 And þat lucina present wolde be  
 The same oure by Iupiter providid  
 It þ to possede all hoole and vndevided  
 ¶ Thus to þe modre of þis Euriste 5090  
 Iuno þe Goddes *grauntid* his fauoure  
 Therbe disposing þat he should be  
 Myghty of puissance lyke an Emperoure  
 But of his nobles þe conquest and labour  
 And of his manhode þe prowes and pursute  
 By Hercules was fully execute  
 ¶ This Hercules hadde þe travaile  
 And Euristeus bare away þe name  
 Eke Ercules faught in plate and mayle  
 And hygh emprisez proudlie did ataine 5100  
 But þe reporte of his noble fame  
 To Euristeus was finallie ascribed  
 Thus of his thanke was Hercules depryved  
 ¶ fful ofte in armes som doth right well  
 And oft causith þat þe felde is wonne  
 And of anoþer þat did neueradele  
 The pryse outespredith like as shene sonne  
 And oft it happith þat he which best hath ronne  
 Dothe not þe spere lyke his desert possede  
 Where fals fauour yevith ylke man his mede 5110  
 ¶ fframe in hir palace haue trompes mo þan oon  
 Som of golde þat yeveth a ful fresh sown  
 Som hath laude þat deserueth noon  
 And som haue ben full worthie of renoun  
 Nothyng *preferres* be to *commendacion*  
 As by reporte of states high and lowe  
 So frowardlie fframe hir trompe hath Iblowe

¶ Touchyng armes þe pore nor the riche  
 Be not ichon of hert coragius  
 Nor all men may not be elyke 5120  
 Nor of þer name egal or gracios  
 [A]nd þof þe pore haue victorius  
 [Of] aventure to do full wele som day  
 [Ot]hir haue pynchid to take his thank away  
 ¶ [Sum sl]eth þe deere with an hoked arowe  
 [Whos] parte is noon yit of þe venison

[19v, col. b]

On beete þe busk anoþer hath þe sparrow  
 And all þe byrdes in his possession  
 Oon draweth his nette vpe in ryvers vp *and* do[n]  
 With sondrie baytes caste oute lyne and hook 5130  
 And hath no parte of all þat euer he toke  
 ¶ And euidence her of ye may se  
 fful notable to be put in memorie  
 Of Hercules and of Euriste  
 ffor Hercules gate ay þe victorie  
 And Euristeus receyvid hath þe glorie  
 Thus þeir palme partid was on tweine  
 That on reyoysyd þat oþer þ bare þe payne  
 ¶ Euristeus was prince of Athene 5140  
 Sone and eyre by descent of line  
 Vnto þe kyng þat callid was Ciciline  
 Vndir whos might as Bochas doth deter[mine]  
 Hercules thurgh knyghtlie discipline  
 Profited s̅e̅ ^moste^ manlie and moste wyse  
 þat from all oþer he bare away þe pryse  
 ¶ But o alas þat euer it shulde befall  
 So noble a knight so manlie so notable  
 þat eny spot shuld his prise apalle  
 Or cause his corage for to be vnstable  
 Which is a thyng doolful and lamentable 5150  
 ffrom his knyghthode which is a thyge to *straunge*  
 þat euer a woman shuld his hert change  
 ¶ I wyl excuse bycause þeir nature  
 Is to change hertes and corages  
 Agayn þeir nature no force may indure  
 ffor þeir flaterie *and* sugred fayre language  
 Lyke Sirens fresh of þeir visages  
 ffor to enchaunte of princis þe nobles  
 Mo þen Hercules can bere herof witnes  
 ¶ This Hercules astonyd and ashamyd 5160  
 Vnto Bochas shewyd his presence



Sayd alas my knyghthode is defamyd  
 By a ful fals amorus pestilence  
 So sore constreynyd by a mortall violence  
 Wherby alas my manhode was applied  
 By sleight of woman oppressid and maistred  
 ¶ To take þeir habit and cloth me in þeir wede  
 To shaue my berde · and force my visage  
 With oynementes agayn all manhode  
 To make it sowple and chaunge my langage 5170  
 And to compleyn more of myn outrage  
 Vpon my fyngyrs fyve twys tolde  
 I hadde rynges richelie wrought of golde  
 ¶ Thus was my corage chaungid feminyne  
 ffor loue of oon callid Iole  
 Of condicions þof she were serpentine  
 Me þought she was so fayre onn to se  
 þat all my ioy was with hir for to be  
 And þat ~~þe~~ non shuld aperceyve my trespas  
 I chaungid both habit looke and face 5180  
 ¶ And was a woman outewarde in apparence  
 Of intente to haue more liberte  
 To vse my lustes and haue experience  
 Of appetites þe which þat vnlawful be  
 Wherof þe sclaunder reboundith vpon me  
 þat I dare say myn outeragius trespas  
 Doth all my knyghthode *and* prowes deface ·  
 ¶ Wherfor o bachas I pray þe take hede  
 ffor to descryve in termys pleyndie *and* clere  
 Myn infortune right as it was in dede 5190  
 þat when oþer conceyven in maner  
 On myn onhappes contagious for to here  
 They may be example of me do þeir peyn  
 ffrom vicius lyfe þeir hertes to restreyne  
 ¶ ffor þeis foolys þat all wisdom diffyse

**[20r, col. a]**

¶ And be contrarius to vertuus discipline  
 May yeve example to folkys þat ben wyse  
 [A]nd be to þem a lanterne of doctrine  
 [V]ices to eschewe and prudentlie decline  
 [ff]ro fleshlie lustys for it is taught in scolis 5200  
 [þ]at wyse men ben al day ware by foles  
 ¶ When Bochas hadde conceyvid þe compleint  
 Of Hercules in his apperyng  
 And hough nobles by women was atteinte  
 [T]hugh his pitevus disordinat lyvyng

[H]e thought anon hymself remembryng  
 [It] hadde be routh for to pute in mynde  
 His vices all and vertues lefte behynde  
 ¶ Considre also it was *impertinent*  
 Outhir by langage to write agayn al right 5210  
 [A]ny thing þat insentente  
 The fame amenissh of so noble a knyght  
 Or to distres many maner sight  
 [H]is glorius prowes sith *poetis* for his werres  
 Reyson his renoun so high aboue þe sterres  
 ¶ ffor he was both knight and philosophir  
 And for his strength callid a geaunte  
 ffor comyn *profite* he gan eke proudlie *profer*  
 Of manlie corage yf þerto felle graunte 5220  
 To entre into Egipte to sle þer þe Geaunt  
 Callid Busiris which of full fals intent  
 Slough all straungers þat thurgh his kyngdam went  
 ¶ ffor vndir a colour of liberalite  
 Vnto his place he gladlie wold call  
 Straungers ichon þat com þurgh his cuntre  
 And solempnelie receyve them oon and all  
 And lyke a kyng both in chambir and hall  
 Make þem such chere in al maner thyng  
 As *perteynynd* to a worthy kyng  
 ¶ But while his gestys lay onyght in slepe 5230  
 This fals Tiranne in ful cruel wyse  
 Mordrid them ichon or þei toke kepe  
 And aftyr þat þis was eke his gyse  
 With þeir blode to make a sacrifice  
 To Iupiter godde of þat cuntre  
 Of ~~hole~~ hole intente to ples his deite  
 ¶ þat in his kingdam of frutes and of greyne  
 He laude þat increce by grete habundaunce  
 Doun from hevyn he wolde send þem reyne  
 This mene he made and þis fals chevesaunce 5240  
 To mordir and sle he had so grete plesaunce  
 ffor all þing hym thought it did hymm goode  
 To mordir his gestes ~~to~~ and to shede þer blode  
 ¶ But when þis mordir of Burises was couth  
 þat no straunger myght passe his lande in pees  
 This manlie knyght yit flourying in his youth  
 This noble famus þis worthy hercules  
 Amonge oþer put hymself in prees  
 And lyke a geste outward in shewyng  
 Cam to þe place of Burises þe kyng 5250  
 ¶ Rebukyd hym of his grete outeage

Don to his gestys by grete violence  
 And for to make pesible þat passage  
 And for to avenge his importable offence  
 And of his mordre to make a recompence  
 This Hercules slough Burises in dede  
 And toke þe blode which he did blede  
 ¶ Offyrd it vp to Iupiter to plesse  
 ffor his victorie hym to magnifie  
 And all Egipte þus was set in ese 5260  
 þeir lande þeir frutes gan also to multiplie 5261  
 And to habound by influence of reyne 5263  
 Which affortyme of vitaille was barenn 5264  
 Their greyne encrece aboute on iche partie 5262

**[20r, col. b]**

¶ Anoper Geaunt callid Antheus  
 Kyng of libie and governde all þat lande  
 Whom Hercules moste strong and coragius  
 Whilom outerayed and slough hym with his hand  
 ffor as þei wrastlid by experience he fonde  
 Touchyng the erthe · þis geaunt it is true 5270  
 His force his myght did allway renewe  
 ¶ But when hercules þe maner did aspye  
 Hough his strength renuyd agayn so ofte  
 þer agayns he shope a remedie  
 High in the eyre he peysid hym vp alofte  
 And with his armes harde and nothyng softe  
 Bak and boon so sore he did embrace  
 þat he fell dede befor hym in þat place  
 ¶ But som bookys of þis geaunt tell 5280  
 Within his kyngdom who did hym assaile  
 He wolde of newe his chivalries compell  
 Ofte agayn to mede hym in ~~batal~~ bataile  
 And in þis wyse ful selde he did faile  
 To afforce of newe as folkys shal vndrestonde  
 His strength his myght all enmys to withstonde  
 ¶ But Hercules of high discrecioun  
 The felde on hym manlie to recure  
 Hadde hym be so sleight oute of his region  
 And as þei met þer of aventure  
 þe sayde ~~Athen~~ Antheus myght not indure 5290  
 But was discomfitid by Hercules anon  
 Maugre his myght he and his men ichonn  
 ¶ Aftyr þis conquest Hercules is goonn  
 ffor exercise his prowes for to vse  
 Agayn þe myghty stronge Gereonn

Kyng of ffaynn of Melleger *and* Ebuse  
 The which tiraune myght hym not excuse  
 That all his laboure as poetis do compile  
 Was fro þis realmes his peples to ~~exile~~ exile  
 ¶ His tirannie ne myght not longe indure 5300  
 ffor Hercules þe noble worthi knyght  
 Made vpon hymm a grete discomfitoure  
 And slough þe tiraune as þei met in fight  
 And aftyr þat he thurgh his grete myght  
 Of high prowesse and magnanimite  
 Slough Cerberus with his hedyes thre  
 ¶ The famus Bulle of þe lande of crete  
 Which þat destroyed all þat regioun  
 He slough also when þei did mete  
 And in Nemea he slough also a fers lioun 5310  
 And for a record of his high renounn  
 Of manlie force his skyn away he toke  
 And to his bodie a cote þerof he shope  
 ¶ To all his ennemies to shew hym moste dredefull  
 þerfor he werid þat hiduus garment  
 And for he was neuer in armes founde dull  
 But euer elike fresh in his intente  
 Into a mounten he made anon his wente  
 Callid Erimantus and þer in his passage  
 He slough a bore moste wylde and most s[avage] 5320  
 ¶ Besyde a ryuer callid Stiphaus  
 Of furius byrdes he slough a ful grete n[oumbre]  
 Within þe kyngdom of kyng Phineus  
 All þe cuntre for þei did encombre  
 ffor with þeir shadowe and contagijs vmb[re]  
 On sedes or frutes whereuer þei alight  
 All was deuourid in euery mannes si[ght]  
 ¶ Vpon þe mountein callid Auentine  
 Which is not ferre from Rome þe c[ite] 5329

**[20v, col. a]**

Which is not ferre from Rome þe Cite 5329  
 þer is a woode as cronicles determine 5330  
 Ryght fresh of sight and goodlie on to see  
 And Hercules passyng by þat cuntre  
 ffro Spaynewarde passyng by Italie  
 Oathus þe Geaunt did hym þer assaile  
 ¶ While Hercules among þe levys grene  
 Layde hym to slepe of soden aventure  
 And his bestes agayn þe sonne shyne  
 While þat he slepte wente in þeir pasture

Cam Cachus forth full hiduus of stature  
 Thought he wolde þeis bestes with hym haue 5340  
 Stale þem ichon and did þem in a caue  
 ¶ And like a thefe he made them go bakwarde  
 That no man shuld þe traces of þem knowe  
 Nor of þeir passage haue no rewarde  
 ffor by þeire tayles he had þem on a rowe  
 Into his caue which þat stode ful lowe  
 And for þei were of excellent fayrnes  
 To kepe þem clos he did his bysynes  
 ¶ Oute of his slepe when Hercules awoke  
 And he perceyvid his oxen were away 5350  
 He rose hym vp and caste aboute his loke  
 Began to espie in all þe haste he may  
 To what partie þe trace of them lay  
 And while he stode þus musyng in the shade  
 He harde lowyng þat his oxenn made  
 ¶ And by þeir lowyng he gan anon aproche  
 Towarde þe partys wher þei were kepte ful clos  
 ffonde þe ~~eau~~ cave vndir a myghty roche  
 And prowde Cachus which had þem in depose  
 Agayn Hercules he sturdyly arose 5360  
 But for al þat he myght hymself not save  
 ffor he hym slough at þe entrie of þe cave  
 ¶ And þus his bestys he hath agayn recurid  
 þat semyd afforn irrecuperable  
 Aftyr þe mountaine befor he hath assured  
 Which for ~~brg~~ brigantes afor was ful doutable  
 But ~~he~~ ^by^ his manhode it was made habitable  
 þat men myght for drede of eny foo  
 When euer þei wolde frely com and go  
 ¶ Touchyng his conquest vpon femynye 5370  
 Agayn Amazones with Theseus he went  
 The Quene Ipolita thurgh his chyualrie  
 ffor his pray anon to hym she wente  
 And Ipolita of full true intente  
 Gave vnto hym in tokyn of victorie  
 Of golde of a gyrdyl to haue hir in memorie  
 ¶ Aftyr þat ^to^ Affryk he wente a ful grete pase  
 Oonly of purpos þe gardey for to se  
 Which aperteynyd to þe kyng Athas  
 þat broþer was to kynge Promothie 5380  
 In Astrologie full expert was he  
 And in his gardenn of which I have yow tolde  
 The riche braunchis and appyls wer of golde  
 ¶ Coruz Magik made by grete avisment

fful streite kepte · and closid environ  
 And wecchid with a fell Serpent  
 That no man entrid þat riche mansioun  
 But Hercules moste myghty of renounn  
 The serpent slough þurgh his manly pursute  
 [A]nd fro þat gardenn he bare awat þe frute 5390  
 ¶[Th]is sayde Athas as bokys specifie  
 [An]d poetis of hym þei specially indite

**[20v, col. b]**

He was connyng in astronomie  
 And þerin dede ful gretlie hym delite  
 And many a boke he made and did write  
 With grete labour and grete diligence  
 In his tyme of þat Science ·  
 ¶The which were more precius þen golde  
 And more riche in his opinioun  
 But Hercules in soth as it is tolde 5400  
 Gate all þe bokys þurgh his grete renoun  
 Bare þem by force oute of þat regioun  
 And into Grece lyke a conqueroure  
 With hym he brought for a grete tresour  
 ¶Of Trace he slough þe tiraune outragius  
 Pat sometyme callid Diomede  
 Which mordred all þat cam into his regioun  
 And with þeir flesh his horse he did fed[e]  
 And þe thought his wit laboure and manh[ode]  
 Of Achillaus which was a grete wondr[e] 5410  
 He made þe stremys for to parte insondre  
 ¶And by his wysdomm dyd þem diuide  
 In .ij. parties disseueryng his passage  
 ffor beforetyme no man myght abyde 5414  
 Turnyng vpwarde þer was noonn oþer bote 5417  
~~Whereuer it flowyd of trees crop and rote~~  
~~¶A grete emperice he did eke vndirtake~~  
~~When þat þe wormes hiduus and horrible~~ 5420  
 Of his course þe furius fell outerage 5415  
 ffor in cuntres s it did so grete damage  
 Turnyng vpward þer was non oþer bote  
 Whereuer it flowyd of trees croppe and rote ·  
 ¶A grete empris he did eke vndirtake  
 When þat þe wormes hiduus and horrible 5420  
 Aryved vp of Archadien þe lake 5421  
 Which with þeir teth and mouth ful terrible 5423  
 Callid ferre þe bestes full odible 5422  
 ffrute greyne and corne did mortally devour 5424

But Hercules did þe cuntre so secoure  
 ¶Cam lyke a knyght þeir malice for to let  
 And by his prudence destruyd þem ichonn  
 Within þe lake þe wormes vp he shet  
 Saue among all behynd was left oonn  
 And agayn hym Hercules anonn 5430  
 Of knyghthode caught so grete avauntage  
 That to þe cuntre he did no more damage  
 ¶This all þat euer may richer sede be  
 Touchyng knyghthode prowesse and prudence  
 Of glorijs fame of longe felicitye  
 This knyghtlie man had moste excellence  
 And in armes lengest experience  
 And for his triumphes and actes merciall  
 He set vp pilers for a memoriall  
 ¶Which remembred his conquestes moste notable 5440  
 And his dedes by gravyng did expresse  
 Beyond which no lande is habitable  
 So ferre abrode spred his high nobles  
 But as þe sonne lenyth his brightnes  
 Somwhile when he is freshest in his spere  
 With vnware cloudes þat sodenlie appere  
 ¶Sembleable þe nobles and þe glorie  
 Of Hercules in þis vnstable lyfe  
 Eclipsid was *and* shadowed his memorie

**[21r, col. a]**

With <sup>^</sup>Be<sup>^</sup> deianira þat somtyme was his wyfe 5450  
 ffor by hir fraude comm in þe mortall stryfe  
 [A]s ye shall here þe maner and þe case  
 [W]herby þat he loste his lyfe alas  
 ¶[Y]t for hir sake þis moste manlie man  
 [ffa]ught as I fynde a singler bataile  
 [Wi]th Achelus son of Æ þe Ocean  
 [Lyk]e as poetis make rehersaile 5457  
 [Thi]s Hercules of knyghthode soueraigne 5459  
 [Ren]te from his hede on of armys tweine 5460  
 [A]nd as eche oþer prouddie did assaile 5458  
 ¶[O]f kyng Oene she was þe doughter dere 5461  
 [To] Hercules ioynyd by mariage  
 [A]nd as þei comm to a grete riuere  
 [W]ith sturdie wawes where was no passage  
 [N]essus þe Geant outhlie of visage  
 [To] Hercules profyrd he *seruise*  
 [An]d ful falslie agayn hym can devise  
 ¶[M]ade his *promis* He to Hercules in dede

[T]o put his lyfe in grete aventure  
 Ouer þe streme Dianyre to leede 5470  
 Because his was large of his stature  
 And for she was a right fayre creature  
 When þei were passid and com to þe lande  
 Nessus falslie volde vpon þe stronde  
 ¶ Haue knowe hir fleshlie like as writith Ouide  
 Hercules havyng þerof a sight  
 As he abode vpon þat oþer syde  
 And for to avenge hym of his grete vnright  
 Toke his bowe and bent it anon riht  
 And with an arowe fylid sharpe and grounde 5480  
 Gafe to Nessus his dedlie fatall wounde  
 ¶ Lyke as ȝ a condite gusshid oute þe blode  
 And whan he sawe þat he muste dye  
 To Dianyre befor hym þer she stode  
 With all his hert hir he gan to þa pray  
 That in oon thyng his luste she wolde obey  
 To take his shert and be not rekles  
 With bloode disteynyd and send it Hercules  
 ¶ Therwith to hym to be reconsilid  
 And she to hym þe shert anon ~~to hym~~ hath sent 5490  
 Thurgh whos venome allas he was begylt  
 ffor what by touchyng *and* by inchauntment  
 His flessch his bones furiuslie were brent  
 And among his dedly peynys all  
 Into a rage sodenlie is fall  
 ¶ As a beste furiuslie he ranne  
 On valez · hillez among þe craggy stonys  
 Sembleable as doth a woode mann  
 Pullid vp trees and rotes all at onys  
 Brake bestes hornys *and* all toknewe þeir bones 5500  
 Was it not pite þat a knyght so goode  
 Shulde among bestes renne sauage *and* wode  
 ¶ Thus ouerwhelmyd was all his worthines  
 And to decline went his prosperite  
 O cause and rote of all his wrecchidnes  
 Was for þat he set all his felicite 5506  
 Of þeis women which erly late *and* sone 5508  
 To trust so myche þe mutabilitie 5507  
 Of þeir nature brayd vpon þe mone 5509  
 ¶ Alas alas all nobles and prudence 5510  
 Prowes of nature force *and* chiualrie  
 fforsight of wysdom discrecion *and* science  
 Vertuus studie profityng and clergy  
 And þe clere shynyng of all philosophie



Hath thurgh fals lustes ben hereafor ~~maneid~~ ^manacid^  
By sleight of women derkyd and defamyd

[21r, col. b]

¶ O Hercules my penne I fele quake  
Myn ynke fulfyllyd with bitter terys salte  
This pitevus tragedie to write for þi sake  
Whome all poetis glorifie and exalte 5520  
But fraude of women made þi renoun halte  
And frowarde muses þi triumphes all torende  
ffor to describe alas þi fatal ende  
¶ The swete venome þe savery fals poyson  
The dredeful ioy · þe dolorus plesaunce  
The woful gladnes ~~ay stable in~~ ^with^ ~~variaunce~~ with furius reson  
ffeyth dispeyrid ~~wher luste hath gouernaunce~~ ay stable in variaunce  
Vertu exilyng wher luste hath gouernaunce  
Thurgh fals luxurie defacen all nobles  
As þis Tragedie can bere ful well witnes · 5530  
¶ Wher froward venus hath dominacioun  
And blynde Cupide his subiectes doth avaunce  
And wylful luste thurgh indiscrecioun  
Is chosen Iuge to holde þe balaunce  
Theire choys vnlefull hath þurgh onhappy chaunce  
Derkyd of princis þe famus high prowes  
As þis Tragedy can ber ful wele witnes  
¶ O þu Hercules for all þin high renoun  
ffor all þi conquest and myghty suffisaunce 5540  
þu were thurgh women brought to confusion  
And thurgh þeir fraude þi renomyd puissaunce  
Disclaundyrd was *and* brought vnto mischaunce  
I were ashamyd to write it or expresse  
Excepte þis Tragedie can bere me well witnes  
¶ Princis · Princessis of high discrecion  
This thyng inprintith in youre remembraunce  
Of opers fallyng make yow proteccion  
Yeve to *preserue* youre purviaunce  
Afforn providid þat youre perseueraunce  
Be not *perturbid* by no fals Sorceresse 5550  
As þis Tragedie oper berith witnes

---

[26r, col. b]

De casu Canacie et Machaire · et de inordi  
/ nato amore in eos ·

¶ Aftyrr Pirrus cam Canace the fayre  
Teris distillyng from hir ieen tweyne

And hir broþer · þat callid was Machaire  
 And both began pitevuslie compleine  
 That ffortune gan agayn them so disdeigne  
 Hyndryng þeir fate by woful aventure  
 Touchyng þeire loue which was agayn nature  
 ¶ He was hir broþer · and hir loue also 6840  
 As þe storie plainlie doth declare  
 And in o bedde þei lay eke both two  
 Reason was non · why þei shulde spare  
 But loue þat causith wo · and eke welfare  
 Gan agayn Kynde so strongelie devise  
 That he hir wombe · made sodenlie aryse  
 ¶ And finallie myn auctour berith witnes  
 A chylde she hadde by hir own broþer  
 Which excellid in fauour and fayrnes  
 ffor lyke to hym of beaute was non oþer 6850  
 But of þeir loue · so so guyes was þe rothir  
 That caribdis twenene wyndys full contrarie  
 Hath Canace destruede and Makarie  
 ¶ ffor wher þeire fadre the maner gan espie  
 Of þeir werkyng which was so odible  
 ffor he fell almoste in frenesie  
 Which for to pece was impossible  
 ffor þe matiere was frowarde and horrible  
 ffor which devoide pleylnlie of all pite  
 Vpon þeire trespas · he woulde avengid be · 6860  
 ¶ The cause knewe þeir fadre anon right  
 Cast for þeire deth of rigour to prouide  
 ffor which Macharie fledde out of his sight  
 And from his presence · his presence gan to hide  
 But o allas · his sistre muste abide  
 Merciles · for þeire hatefull trespas  
 Suffre deth þer was non oþer grace  
 ¶ ffyrste hir fadre a sharpe swerde to hir sent  
 In tokyn of deth · for a remembraunce  
 And when she wyste · pleylnlie what it ment 6870  
 And conceyvyd his rigorus ordinaunce  
 With holo purpos to beyen his plesaunce  
 She gruchid not but lowlie of intente  
 Lyk a meke doughter to his desire assent  
 ¶ But or she diede · she caste for to write  
 A little lettre to hir broþer dere  
 A dedlie compleint · compile and endite  
 With a pale face and a mortall chere  
 The salte teres from hir ien clere  
 With pitevus sobbyng fet from hir hertes brynk 6880

Distillyng down · to tempre with hir ynk  
 ¶ Oute of hir swownyng when she did abrayd  
 Knowyng no mene but deth in hir distres  
 To hir broþer ful pitevuslie she saide  
 Cause of my sorowe · rote of myn hevynes  
 That whilom ~~wel~~ were chef · sours of my gl[adnes]  
 When both oure ioyes by wyll were dis[posid]  
 Vndre a kay · oure hertes to be inclosid  
 ¶ Somtyme þu were · supporte *and* sicurn[es]  
 Chefe reioysyng of my wordlie plesaunce  
 But nowe þ þu arte grownde of my sekn[es]  
 Wele and wanhope of my dedlie penaun[ce]  
 Which haue of sorowe grettest habun[daunce]  
 That euer yit hadde any creature ·  
 Which muste for loue · þe deth allas i[ndure]

6890

[26v, col. a]

¶ þu were somtyme my blys and all my truste  
 Souereigne comfort my sours to appese  
 Spryng and well of all my hertes luste  
 And new allas chefe rote of my disese  
 But yf my deth myght do þe eny ese  
 O broþer myn in remembrance of tweyn  
 Deth shal to me be plesaunce and no payn  
 ¶ My cruell fadre moste vnmerciabile  
 Ordeigned hath · it nedes muste be so  
 In his rigour he is vntreteable  
 All *merciles* he wyl þat it be do  
 þat we algate shall die both two  
 But I am gladde sith it may be non oþer  
 þu art escapid my beste beloved broþer  
 ¶ This is myn ende · I may it not starte  
 O broþer myn þer is no more to say  
 Louly besechyng with all myn hoole herte  
 ffor to remembre specialli þis pray I  
 If it befall my litle son to die  
 That þu maiste sum mynde vpon vs haue  
 Suffre vs both · to be buried both in o graue  
 ¶ I holde hym streythe atwyn myn armes tweyn  
 þu *and* nature layde on me þis charge  
 He gyltles · with me muste suffre peyn  
 And sith þu arte at fredam and at large  
 Lete kyndnes oure loue so discharge  
 But haue a mynde whereuer þat þu be  
 Onys of þe day of þis chylde and me  
 ¶ On þe and me dependith þe trespas

6900

6910

6920

Touchyng oure gylte *and* oure greate outrence  
 But welaway · most angelik of face  
 Oure yonge childe in his pore innocence  
 Shal agayn right suffre dethis violence  
 Tendre of lymmes · godde wot ful giltles  
 The goodlie fayre childe · which lieth her spechles 6930  
 ¶ A mouth he hath but wordes hath he noun  
 Can not compleine alas for non outrage  
 Nor gruchid not · but lieth here alloun  
 Stille as a lombe moste meke of his visage  
 What hert of stele couth do to hym damage  
 Or suffre hym die · beholdyng þe maner  
 And looke benigne of his · ij · ien clere ·  
 ¶ O þu my fadre · to cruell is þi wrech  
 Harder of herte · þan Tigre or lioun  
 To sle a childe þat lieth without spech 6940  
 Voyde of all *mercy* and remission  
 And on his modre haste no compassioun  
 His youth conside · with lippes soft as sylk  
 Which at my brest lith stil *and* soukith mylke  
 ¶ Is eny sorow remembred by writyng  
 Vnto my ferful sighes comparable  
 Or was þer euer creature lyvyng  
 Pat felt of doole a thyng more lamentable  
 ffor comfortles and vnrecuperable  
 Are þeis hepid sorowes full of rage 6950  
 Which haue with wo oppressid my corage  
 ¶ Rekyn all myschevys in especiall  
 And on my myschefe remembre *and* haue goode mynd  
 My lorde my fadre · is myn ennemy motrall  
 [Ex]perience enough þer of I fynde  
 ffor in his pursute · he hath lefte behynde  
 [In] destruccion of my chylde and me  
 [Ro]uth and all *mercy* · and fadrelie pite  
 ¶ [An]d þe my broþer · avoidid from his sight  
 [Whi]ch in no wyse · his *grace* maiste atteine 6960

**[26v, col. b]**

Allas þat rigour vengeaunce and cruell right  
 Shall aboue *mercie* be ladie souereigne  
 But cruelte doth at me so disdeigne  
 That þu my broþer my childe and also I  
 Shal die · exilid allas from all *mercie*  
 ¶ My fadre somtyme by many a sondrie signe  
 Was my socoure and supportacion  
 To þe and me · moste gracios and benigne

Oure worldie gladnes oure consolacioun  
 But loue and fortune haue turnyd vpsodoun 6970  
 Oure grace allas oure welfare and oure fame  
 Harde to recure so slaundred is oure name  
 ¶ Spot of diffamyng is harde to wash away  
 When noyse and rumour abrode do folke manace  
 To hyndre a man · þer may be no delay  
 ffor hateful fame · flieth ferre in ful short space  
 But of vs tweyn þer is noon oþer grace  
 Saue oonlie deth · and aftyr deth allas  
 Eternal slaundre of vs · þus standeth þe cas  
 ¶ Whom shal we blame or shal we atwite 6980  
 Oure grete offence · sith we may it hide  
 ffor our excuse · reportes to respite  
 Meene is þer noon · excepte þe godde Cupide  
 And þof þat he wolde · for vs provide  
 In this matier to be oure chef refuge  
 Poetis seyn · he is blynde to be a Iuge  
 ¶ He depicte like a blynd Archer  
 To make aright faylyng discrecion  
 Holdyng no mesure · nouþer ferre ne nere  
 But lyke fortunes disposicion 6990  
 All vpon happe · voide of all reason  
 As a blynde archer · *with* arowes sharpe grounde  
 Of aventure yevith many a mortall wounde  
 ¶ At þe and me · he wronglie did marke  
 ffelly to hyndre our fatall adventures  
 As ferre os phebus shynyth in þe ark  
 To make vs refuse · to all creatures  
 Callid vs tweyn vnto þe woofull lures  
 Of diffame which wyl departe neuer  
 By newe reporte · þe noyse ~~reportyng~~ <sup>reportyng</sup> ^increcyng^ euer 7000  
 ¶ Odious fame · with swyft wynges flieth  
 But all þe goode fame · at Envie doth restreyne  
 Iche man oþer þe difautes seeth  
 Yit on his own no man wyll compleyn  
 But all þe worlde oute crieth on vs tweyn  
 Whos hateful Ire by vs may not be quemyd  
 ffor I muste die · my fadre hath so demyd  
 ¶ Now fare weele broþer to me it doth suffise  
 To die allon for oure both sake  
 And in my moste faithfull humble wyse 7010  
 Vnto my dethwarde þof I tremble *and* quake  
 Of þe for euer my leue nowe I take  
 Yit ones ayere forgete not but take hede  
 My fatall day · þis *lettre* for to rede ·

¶ So shalt þu haue of me som remembraunce  
My name impryntid in þi kalender  
By rehersaile of my dedelie grevaunce  
Were blak þat day · and make a doolful chere  
And whan þu commyst and shalt approche nere  
My sepulcure · I pray þe not disdeigne 7020  
Vpon my graue · som teres for to reyne  
¶ Writyng hir *lettre* awhappid and adrede  
In hir right hand hir penne began to quake  
And a sharpe swerde to make hir hert blede  
In hir lifte hand · hir fadre hath hir take  
And hir moste sorowe was for hir chyldes sake  
Vpon whos face in hir barme slepyng  
fful many a tere she wepte compleynyng

[27r, col. a]

¶ Aftyr all þis · so as she toke and quoke  
His chylde beholdyng · myd of hir peynes smerte 7030  
The swerde in hir right hand she toke  
And rofe hirselfe even to þe herte  
Hir f childe fel down which myght not asterte  
Hauyng noon helpe to socour' hym nor saue  
But in hir bloode hymselfe began to bathe  
¶ And þan hir fadre moste cruel of intende  
Badde þat þe chylde shuld anon be take  
Of cruell houndes in haste for to be rente  
And be devourid for his modre sake  
Of þis Tragedie þus an ende I make 7040  
Proces of which as men may rede and se  
Concludith on myschefe and furius cruelte  
¶ Remembryng firste as made is mencion  
Hough þat Pirrus delite hym in dede  
Whan Troie was brought to destruccion  
With cruel swerde · Troian bloode to shede  
But of which slaughter · seeth here þe cruel mede  
As right requirith by vnware violence  
Bloode shedde for bloode · is small recompence  
¶ When surquedie · oppressid hath pite 7050  
And meknes is with tirannie bore down  
And agayn right hasty cruelte  
To be vengeable makith no delacion  
What foloweth þerof by clere inspeccion  
Seth in example hough Pirrus in his tene  
Of hateful Ire slough yonge Polixene  
¶ Kyng Eolus to rigorus was parde  
And to vengeable in his intencion

Agayn his children Macharie and Canace  
 So importable was his ~~puniss~~ punicion 7060  
 Of haste procedyng to þeir destruccion  
 Wers in his Ire as it was weele sene  
 Then cruel Pirrus which slough polixene  
 ¶ Noble princes prudent and attempre  
 Differreth vengeaunce of high discrecion  
 Tyll youre ire sumwhate aswagid be  
 Doth neuer of dome · non execucion  
 ffor hate of rancour · *perturbeth* youre reson  
 Of hasty Iuges more of intente vncleue  
 Þen cruel pirrus · which slough polixene Book I.7070  
 ¶ Thus Iohn Bochas *procedyng* in his boke Book II.127  
 Which in noumbre · is callid þe secund  
 Gan for to write and his purpos tok  
 To set in stories such as ye hadde founde 130  
 Of intent all vyces to confounde  
 By example which he did expresse  
 And at þe begynnyng of his bysynesse  
 ¶ Myghty Saul to hym did appere  
 Kyng of Israel pitevuslie wepyng  
 Dedlie of face and with an hidius chere  
 His voice broken · by many a sobbyng  
 And to myn auctor · his sorowes compleynyng  
 Requyryng hym togyddir when þei met  
 ffryst in his booke his woful fall to set 140  
 ¶ Anon aftyr · of on intencion  
 With penne in hande faste gan me spede  
 And as I couth in my translacion  
 In þis labour ferþer to procede  
 My lorde cam forth by · *and* gan to take hede  
 This myghty prince right manlie *and* right wyse  
 Gafe me charge · in his prudent advise ·  
 ¶ That I shuld in euery Tragedie  
 Aftyr þe processe make intencion  
 At þe ende set a remedie 150

**[27r, col. b]**

With a ~~lenevie~~ Lenvoie · conueied by reson  
 And aftyr þat with humble affeccion  
 To noble princes lowlie it directe  
 By opers fallyng · þei myght þemself correcte  
 ¶ And I obeied his byddyng and plesaunce  
 Vndre supporte of his magnificence  
 As I couth · I can my penne inhaunce  
 Al be I was baren of eloquence

ffolowyng myn auctor in substance of sentence  
 ffor it suffised pleyndie vnto me 160  
 So þat my lord my makynge toke at gre · 161

**Incipit secundus liber**

¶ TO summe folk *parcas* it wolde seme 1  
 Touchyng þe chaunges *and* mutabilites  
 By me rehersed þat þei myght deme  
 Of fortunes straunge aduersites  
 To princis shewyd · pullid down from þeir sees ·  
 The Tragedies ought not suffice ·  
 In compleynyng which ye harde devise

¶ The storie pitevus · þe processe lamentable  
 Voide of ioy · gladnes *and* plesaunce  
 A thyng to grevus and to importable 10  
 Wheras no myrth medlid is with grevaunce  
 All vpon compleint · stondith þe alliance  
 Most whan fortune · who þat hir course well knewe  
 Chaungith olde ioye · into sorowes newe ·

¶ ffor vnto hym þat neuer wist of woo  
 Remembrance of his olde gladnes  
 When his welfare and plesaunce is go  
 And neuer afforn knewe of noon hevynes  
 Suche vnware chaunge such vncouth wrechidnes  
 Causith in princes · þurgh newe dedlie trouble 20  
 Aftyr þat fallying · þeir sorowes to be double

¶ Olde example of princes þat haue fall  
 þeire remembraunce of newe brought to mynde  
 May be a mirrour · to estates all  
 Hough þei in *vertu* shal remedies fynde  
 To eschewe vicis of such as were made blynde  
 ffro sodeine fallying · þemself to preserue  
 Longe to continue and thank of godde *deserue*

¶ The fall of oon is a clere Lanterne  
 To teche anoper what he shal eschewe 30  
 Perill of oon · is · who can discerne  
 Scole and doctrine from *perill* to remewe  
 As men discerne <sup>^deserue^</sup> · suche guerdon *per* muste sewe  
 In vice nor *vertu* · no man may godde deceyve  
 Lyke þeire desertes · þeire mede þei receyve ·

¶ Who þat folowe *vertu* lengest doth perseuer  
 Be it in riches · be it in pouerte  
 Light of trouthe · his clernes kepith euer  
 Agayn passantes of all aduersite  
*Vertu* is cause of longe prosperite 40  
 And when princes from *vertu* do decline



þeir fame is shrowdid vndre þe eclipsid lyne  
¶ffor fals fortune which turnyth as a ball  
Of vnwar chaunges · þof men hir whele atw[ite]  
It is not she · þat princes gafe þe fall  
But vicius lyvyng pleylnlie to indit[e]  
þof godde aboue ful of oft doth þem [respite]  
Longe abideth · and doth his grace sende  
To þis intent · þei shuld þeir lyf amen[de]  
¶ffor þeir welfare · *and* þeir abydyng longe

50

[27v, col. a]

Who aduertiseth · dependith not on chaunce  
Goode lyfe and vertu · makith them to be stronge  
And þem assureth in longe *perseuerance*  
Vertu on fortune makith a diffiaunce  
þat fortune hath no *dominacion*  
Wher noble princis be governed by reason  
¶But such as liste not correctid be  
By example of *oper* fro vicius *gouernaunce*  
And from *oper* vicis liste not for to fle  
If þei be troublid in þeire high puissance  
Thei ~~arte~~ arrecte it fortunes variaunce  
Touchyng þe gyftys þat þei did vse  
þeire demerites ful falslie to excuse  
¶Vertu conserueth *princes* in glorie  
And conseruith þeir *dominacions*  
And vicis putten ~~þer~~ þeire pris oute of memorie  
ffor þeire trespacis *and* þeire transgressiones  
And in all such soden mutacions  
þei can not refute · nor no bettyr socoure  
But agayn fortune · to meke þeire clamour  
¶Make and oute crie on hir doublenes  
As no gylt were in þeire own dede  
Thus vntrulie þei call hir a goddes  
Which litle or nought may helpe at such a nede  
But yf þei hadde godde in loue *and* drede  
Trustith his lordeship in hert and thought  
þen shal fortune be playnlie set at nought  
¶Euidencis ful expert and palpable  
Beforn rehersid tolde of diuerse ages  
Worldlie glories · veyne and ful vnstable  
With deceites double of þeire visages  
Shewyng to *princes* · forme of þeir corages  
By þeis examples hough in what wyse  
Both þeis fallying · þei shal themself chastyse  
¶Signes shewyd and tokyns in the heuyn

60

70

80

Diuerse cometes and constellacions  
 Dredeful thundrynges · fereful fyry levyn  
 Rumor in erth and grete dissenciones  
 Disobeisaunce in sondrie regiones  
 Shewe examples · ful well afferme I dare 90  
 To myghti princes · þem biddynge to be ware  
 ¶ Theire lyfe to amend · or þe lorde do smyte ·  
 Thurgh negligence · or it be to late  
 And or þe swerde of vengeaunce do bite  
 Into ~~vertues~~ vertuus · þeir vicius lyf ~~to change~~ translate  
 Cherish rightwesnes ~~all~~ agayn all wronge debate  
 With drede of godde · make þemself stronge  
 Þen is no doute · þei shal indure longe  
 ¶ Who is not ware · by oþer chastysyng  
 Oþir by hym shal chastised be 100  
 Harde is þat herte which for no writyng  
 ffor no doctrine nor non auctorite  
 ffor non example wyl from his vicis fle  
 [To] indurate is · his frowarde entente  
 [W]hich wyl not suffre his hardnes to relente  
 ¶ [The r]ownde dropys of þe smoth reyne  
 [Whi]ch þat descende and fall from alofte  
 [On] stones harde · at ie as it is seene  
 [Perci]th þe hardnes · with þeire fallyng ofte  
 [Al be] in touchyng water is but softe 110  
 [The] Percyng causid by force nor puissance  
 [But] of fallyng by longe continuaunce  
 ¶ [Sembl]eable of right · I dare reherce  
 [Oft re]dyng of bookes fructuus

**[27v, col. b]**

The hertis shulde of prudent princes perce  
 Synk in þeir mynd and make þem vertuus  
 To eschew all þing þat is vicius  
 ffor what avaylith · þe examples þat þei rede  
 To þeire redyng · yf contrarie be þe dede  
 ¶ Connyng and dede · who can comprehend 120  
 In clere conceites · þei be þinges tweyn  
 And yf cunnyng doth þe dede amende  
 Þen between þem is maade a myghty cheyne  
 A noble þing and right souereygne  
 ffor þen of cunnyng · þe labour is well spent  
 Whan dede folowith · and both ben of assent 126

---

[34r, col. b58]

**De casu Didonis Regine · *que fundauit Cartaginem***

Now must I put my rude stile in pres  
To quene Dido make my passag[e]  
Hir lorde Siche · was preste to h[ercules] 1900  
Hir fadre Belas fall into grete ag[e]  
Kynge of Tyre and she quene of C[artage]  
And it is redde in bookes þat be t[rewe]

[34v, col. a]

Hough fyrste in Tyre was founde purpul hewe  
¶ Cadmus founde fyrste *lettres* for to write  
Gafe þem to Grekes as made is mencion  
Whos broþer ffenix as clerkes eke indite  
ffounde fyrste þe colour of vermylon  
And of Cartage þo famus myghty town  
This saide Dido hyr storie doth expresse 1910  
Hough she was both quene and founderesse  
¶ But hir husbond was chefe lorde and sire  
Callid Cicheus ful famus of renoun  
Of þis noble cite namyd Tire  
Hadde grete tresoure and grete possession  
And for envie kynge Pigmalion  
Broþer to Dido þus she slough in dede  
Of fals intent his riches to possede  
¶ Dido þis slaughter toke greteli at hert  
Sore compleynyng þis vnhappy chaunce 1920  
fflein oute of Tire and hirselfe avaunce 1922  
With all þe tresoure and all þ habundaunce  
Behynd lefte whan hir lorde was dede  
Hir shippes entryng went away for drede  
¶ She knewe and dredde þe gredie avarice  
Of hir broþer kynge pigmalion  
¶ And hough þat hateful and vnstable vice  
Was grounde and rote and chefe occasioun  
Why þat hir lorde was slayn in þat townn 1930  
ffor whom ful oft she cried welaway  
Whos deth was cause whi þat she fled away  
¶ She hadde also þis opinion  
Which causid moste hir hertlie hevynesse  
That she hir broþer Kyng Pigmalion  
Hadde sle hir lorde for his grete richesse  
Yf she abode þat she wolde hym dresse  
Parcel for malice · *parcel* for couetyse  
To haue hir tresoure som treson to practise  
¶ And for to eschewe his malice and his tresoun 1940

ffor hir naveie she makith ordinaunce  
Boldest of þem in whom as by resoun  
She shulde of right set hir affiaunce  
And ful redy for to do plesaunce  
By on assent for noþing wolde faile  
With fayre Dido oute of þat lande to assaile

¶ In cypre fyrst was hir aryvaile  
And þer she fonde by a ryuersyde  
Of yong maydyns with ful rich apperaile  
Sixti and tenn · in þe same tyde  
Which in þe temple of venus did abyde  
Aftyr þe custom as I can reporte  
Of Cipriens straungers to disporte

1950

¶ In þeir moste feithful humble wyse  
Aftyr þe rites of Cypre þe cuntre  
Vnto venus ich day do sacrifice  
Them to conserue in þeire virginite  
Duryng þe lyfe to lyve in chastite  
Neuer to be ioynynd in mariage

[A]nd with Quene Dido þei went forth to Cartage

1960

¶ [In] þeire passage fell a grete miracle  
[As] Seruius maketh mencioune  
[For] Dido toke of Iuno þis oracle  
[Oþer] by apperying or by a vision  
[Of] Cartage to belde þat myghty town  
[And at] reuerence of þat grete goddessse  
[She to] parties fast gan hir dresse

¶ [The] saide cite statelie for to founde  
[And hir] workmen as þei þiddyr sought  
[An oxes he]de of aventure þei founde  
[And to Que]ne Dido þe hede anon þei brought

1970

**[34v, col. b]**

Menyng wherof to serche oute she thought  
And in clerkes in þeire diuinaile  
Tolde it was tokyn of seruage and travaile ·  
¶ ffor which she lefte to belde in þat place  
And gan remove as she ought of right  
And from þens but a litle space  
A soile she founde ful delectable of sight  
And as hir werkmen with þeir ful myght  
þe grounde gan serche anon or þei toke hede  
The storie tellith þei founde an horse hede ·  
¶ And by expounyng of hir diuinacions  
ffonde þis beste gretlie myght availe  
Vnto princes and myghty conqueroures

1980

Necessarie in werre and in bataile  
 And for no wight hir nobles shuld assaile  
 Cartage she beldid of so grete excellence  
 Agayne all ennemies to stonde at defence  
 ¶ Som bookes declare and specifie  
 Dido did as mich londe purches 1990  
 As a skyn in rownde myght occupie  
 Of an ox · þeron to belde a place  
 Þe grounde compasside toke a ful large space ·  
 Which stronglie beldid · þus it is befall  
 Aftyr þe skynne · men did B it Birsa calle  
 ¶ And whan þis cite myghtilie was wallid  
 Aftyr a skyn wrought by good corraie  
 The name ~~toke~~ ^take^ Carta it was callid  
 Leddyr of Birsa · pleyntie þis is no nay  
 Toke eke ~~it~~ his name duryng many a day 2000  
 Carta *and* Birsa knyht in þeir language  
 As mych to say as þis worde Cartage ·  
 ¶ And in Affrik stondith þe territorie  
 Where she belde þe cite delectable ·  
 ffoundid it in laude and memorie  
 Of myghti Iuno þe goddesse honorable  
 The Cite wallid with tourys stronge *and* stable  
 Tyme of kyng David myd þe iiij<sup>th</sup> · age ·  
 As I saide erste callid it Cartage ·  
 ¶ With grete worship she reigned in þat town 2010  
 Euer of purpos to lyue in chastite  
 And rownde aboute flourid þe renown  
 Of hir prudence and hir honeste ·  
 Tyl þe reporte of hir famus beaute  
 Cam to þe eris · which gladlie wyl not hyde  
 Of a kyng þat dwellyd þer besyde ·  
 ¶ Of musitans he was lorde and syre  
 As poetis playntie liste descryve  
 Which in his herte gretelie gan desire  
 The quene dido by hir assent to lyue 2020  
 Vnto hir grace yf he myght aryue  
 But for she hadde avowed chastite  
 She neuer caste ~~wowed~~ ^married^ for to be ·  
 ¶ The kyng surprisid with loue in his corage  
 ffor hir wysdam and hir grete beaute  
 Sent to þe princes of all Cartage  
 Of þis matier to haue a grete trete  
 To condescende yf it myght be  
 Lyke his desire in all þeire best intende  
 Don þeir deuer · to make her to consent 2030

¶ With his request he gan þem eke ~~manee~~ ^manace^  
If he faylid of his intencioun  
Lyke his desire to stonde in his grace  
Sayde he wolde ~~lyue~~ be enmye to þe town  
To ordeigne by force for þeire destruccioun  
Not fully sobre nor fully a in a rage

[35r, col. a]

This was to þem pleynlie his language  
¶ But for þei knewe hir grete stedfastnesse  
And hir hert verreie immutable  
They were afferde any worde to expresse 2040  
[L]est þeire answer were not acceptable  
[T]o his highnesse for þei were no tretable  
[E]ke in þeire conceit þei gan also recorde  
[T]o his desire · þe quene wolde not accorde  
¶ [W]ith good advise an answer þei purveide  
To his purpos in partie fauorable  
[A]fferde he wolde þeire noble town verrey  
[A]nd of disdeigne vpon þem be vengeable  
[Bu]t quene Dido in hir intende ay stable  
[Ca]ste she wolde · whateuer þei hir tolde 2050  
[H]ir chaste avowe feithfullie to holde  
¶ She set aside of þis cruel kyng  
[H]is fell manaces and his wordes grete  
[A]nd to hir princes for þeir consentyng  
Which stode in fere of þat he did þem threte  
She vnto þem gaue a maner hete  
ffor þei were bold attemp or tame  
To trete of matier rebowndyng to hir shame  
¶ Nay raper *quod* she þan to assent  
To þis desyre which þing godde forbode 2060  
Or fro þo cuntre of my chaste intende  
ffor to remove ouþer in þought or dede  
Which were disclaundre to all womanhed  
To condescende for eny manacyng  
To breke my vowe for plesaunce of a kynge  
¶ Touchyng manaces made to þis cite  
ffor to destrue it þurgh his grete myght  
Without cause or title of equite  
To grownde hym a querel agayn right  
Onlie for he is blyndyd in his sight 2070  
With frowarde luste my chaste vowe to assaile  
Beth right wele sure · hough ^he^ þerof shal fayle  
¶ If ye were bolde and manlie of corage  
ffor comyn profit youre cite to defende

And to withstonde youre vicius outrage  
 To trete with hym ye wolde not condescende  
 But myn intent pleylnlie *comprehende*  
 Wheþer it to yow be ioy or displesaunce  
 In my promisse shal be no variance  
 ¶ My lorde Sitheus which allas is dede 2080  
 Vnto þe ~~wel~~ worlde whoso liste aduerte  
 Trustith right well for manacyng or drede  
 Þat he shal neuer die in myn herte  
 Nor ye shal neuer myn avowe peruerte  
 Thus advisid while þat I stonde fre  
 Quene of Cartage to gouerne þis cite ·  
 ¶ Myn hasty answeare I pray yow not disdeigne  
 But þat ye liste to yeve me liberte  
 With youre supporte þat I may atteine  
 To haue a space grauntid vnto me 2090  
 This is to mene þe space of monethes thre  
 My lordes wyll to accomplish of intende  
 Which he whilom made in his testament  
 ¶ Vndre colour to hir avauntage  
 She toke þis space bookes specifie  
 Þat she myght hir cite of Cartage  
 In þe mene while stronglie fortifie  
 Agayn hir ennemies þat for no slogardrie  
 Of þem þat wolde hir high estate confounde  
 Vnpurveide hir Cite þat þei founde 2100  
 ¶ When · iij · monethes passid were and goonn  
 She aftyr wolde for hir hertlie plesaunce  
 With sundrie rites many mo þan oon  
 To all hir goddes doonn som obseruaunce ·

**[35r, col. b]**

ffor a special <sup>^and^</sup> singler remembraunce  
 Of hym þat was as folk shal vndrestond  
 Whilom hir lorde and best beloved husbond  
 ¶ And nere to exalte his glorie *and* his honour  
 Holde his exequies by du reuerence  
 Of all Cartage in þe highest toure 2110  
 With brennyng fyre fumys and incense  
 Hir princes all beyng in presence  
 To which she gan declare in compleynyng  
 Hir dedelie sorowe down from hir toure lokyng  
 ¶ ffare wele my frende fare wel for euermore  
 Vnto my lorde my husband I muste goon  
 To hym I mene þat was my lorde of yore  
 ffor of husbondes godde wote I haue but oon

Prayng yow to reporte euerychonn  
Aftyr my deth hough Dido of Cartage 2120  
Ioynyd was but onys in mariage ·

¶ Sey to þe kyng which haue yow manacid  
My chaste beaute þat he wolde assaile  
And telle hym hough þat I am passid  
And of his purpos hough þat he shal fayle  
His manacyng shal not hym availe  
And say hough dido died for þe nones  
ffor she not wolde be weddyd more þan ones ·

¶ Leuer I haue my lyfe as now to lese 2130  
Raper þan saile my wydowes chastite  
Lete hym go forth som oper for to chese  
ffor in such case he shal not spede of me ·  
And with þe tresour' of myn honeste  
Which I haue trulie obseruyd all my lyve ·  
I wyl departe out of þis worlde now blyve ·

¶ And into fyre þat brent clere and bright  
She ranne in haste þer is no more to seyn  
Saue with a knyfe in euery mannes sight  
fful sodenlie she rafe hir hert in tweyn  
Whos pitevus deth þe cite gan compleyn 2140  
Sore wepyng for wondur and for routh  
In a woman to fynde so grete a trouth

¶ Aftyr hir deth þei did þeire bysynesse  
To holde an halow a feste funerall  
Worshippid hir like a chaste goddesse  
And hir commendyng in especiall  
To heuenlie goddes and goddes infernall  
And wedowys all in þeire cloþis blake  
At þis feste wepte for hir sake

¶ Touchyng Dido · lete þer be no stryfe 2150  
þof þat she be accusid of Ovide  
Aftyr Bochas I wrote hir chaste lyfe  
And þe contrarie I haue set it asyde  
ffor me þought it was better to abyde  
On hir goodnesse þan þing reherse in dede ·  
Which myght resown agayn hir womanhede

¶ To Eneas þof she was fauorable  
To Italie makyng his passage  
All þat she did it was full commendable 2160  
Hym to receyve commyng by Cartage  
Thof al som folke were large of þeire lang[uage]  
Ones to expown by reporte to expresse  
Thyng doon to hym oonlie of gentillesse  
¶ Ther shal for me be made no rehersaile



But as I fynde writen in Bochas  
ffor to say well may mych more availe  
Than frowarde speche in many diuerse case  
But al Cartage oft saide allas  
Hir deth compleynyng purghoute þeir [cite]  
Which slough hirselfe to obserue hir chas[tite] 2170

[35v, col. a]

¶O fayre Dido moste stable in þi constaunce  
Queene of Carta · mirroure of high noblesse  
Reignyng in glorie and vertuus habundance  
Callid in þi tyme chefe sours of gentillesse  
In whom was neuer founde doublenesse  
Ay of oon herte and so þu didiste fyne  
With light of trouth all wedowes to illumine  
¶Chaste and vnchaungid in þi perseuerance  
And immutable founde in þi goodnesse  
Which neuer þoughtist vpon variance 2180  
fforce and prudence wardens of þi fayrnesse  
I haue no language þi vertues to expresse  
By newe reporte so socreteli þei do shyne  
With light of trouth all widowes to illumine

¶O loodesterre of all goode gouernaunce  
All vicius lustes by wysdam to represse  
Thy grene youth flouryng with all plesaunce  
þu dedist it bridill with vertuus sobrenesse  
Diane demenyd so chastlie þi clenness  
While þu were sole pleylnie to termyne 2190  
With lyght of trouth all wydowes to illumine  
¶Thy famus beaute to put in remembraunce  
þu slough þiselfe of innocent purnesse  
Leste þi surenes were hangyde in a balance  
Of such as caste þi chastite to oppresse  
Deth was enough to bere þerof witenesse  
Causyng þi beaute to clennes to incline  
With light of trouth all wydowes to illumine

¶O noble matrones which haue of suffisaunce  
Of womanhede your wittes doth vp dresse 2200  
Hough þat fortune lyst to turne hir chaunce  
Beth not to racle of soden hastynesse  
But ay providith in youre stablenesse  
þat no such folly entre youre corage  
To folow Dido þat was queene of Cartage  
¶With hyr maners haue non aqueyntaunce  
Put oute of my ^mynde^ such foltish wylfulnesse  
To sle youreselfe were a grete penaunce

Godde of his grace defende yow and blysse  
 And *preserue* youre varyyng britilnesse 2210  
 þat youre trouth fall in non outrage  
 To folow Dido þat was quene of Cartage  
 ¶ With *couerte* coloure and sobre *contenaunce*  
 Of feithful menyng pretendith a liknesse  
 Countrefetith in speche and daliaunce  
 All þing þat sowndith into stedfastnesse  
 Of prudence by grete *avisenesse*  
 Youreselfe restreynyth yonge and olde of age  
 To folow Dido þat was quene of Cartage  
 ¶ Lete all youre porte be voide of *displesaunce* 2220  
 To gete in frendes doth youre *bysynesse*  
 And beth *neuer* withoute *purveiaunce*  
 So shall ye beste increse in richesse  
 In oon allon may be no *sicurnesse*  
 To youre hertes be *diuerse* of language  
 Contrarie to Dido þat was quene of Cartage  
 ¶ Holdith your' *seruantes* vndre obeisaunce  
 Lete þem nouþer haue fredam nor largesse  
 But vndre daunger don þeire *obseruaunce*  
 Dauntith þeir pride · þem brydil with lownesse 2230  
 And whan þe *serpent* of newfanglenesse  
 Assaileth yow · doth youre *avauntage*  
 Contrarie to Dido þat was quene of Cartage  
**De casu Sardinopalli Regis Assiriorum et  
 de eius feminea ei condicione**

[35v, col. b]

Of Assirie to rekyn kynges all  
 Which hadde þat londe vndre subieccion  
 Laste of ichon was Sardinapall  
 Moste feminine of condicion  
 Wherfor fortune hath hym þrowe down  
 And compleynyng moste outhlie of *maner*  
 Nexte after Dido to Bochas did appere · 2240  
 ¶ To *vicius* luste his lyfe he did incline  
 Among disers when he his reigne began  
 Of fals vsage he was so feminine  
 þat among women vpon þe rokke he span  
 In þeire habit disguysid from a man  
 And of froward fleshlie insolence  
 Of all men he fledde þe presence  
 ¶ ffyrste þis kyng ches to be his guyde  
 Modre of vices callide Idlenesse  
 Which of custom ich vertu set asyde 2250

In iche courte wher she is maistresse  
 Of sorow and mischefe þe fyrste foundresse  
 Which causid oonlie in þis Sardanapall  
 Pat to all goodness his wittes did appall  
 ¶ He founde vp fyrste riot and dronknesse  
 Callid a fadre of luste and lecherie  
 Hateful of harte he was to sobrenesse  
 Cherisshyng surefetes wache and glotenye  
 Callid in his tyme a prince of baudrie  
 ffounde rere soppers and feddyr beddes softe 2260  
 Drynke late *and* chaunge his wynes ofte  
 ¶ The eyre of ~~mete~~ metes · and of baudie cookes  
 Which of custom all day roste and sede  
 Savours of spites ladil and fleshhokes  
 He lovid well and toke of þem goode heede  
 And folke þat dranke more þan it was nede  
 Smellyng of wyne for þeir grete excesse  
 With þem to abide was holy his gladnesse  
 ¶ He ~~þus~~ þought also þat it did hym goode 2270  
 To haue abought hym agayn al skyll *and* right  
 Boristous bochers all besprent with bloode  
 And wattrie fysshers abrode euer in his sight  
 Beire cootes powdrid with scales syluer white  
 Demp þeir odour duryng all his lyfe  
 Was to his corage beste *perseruatif*e  
 ¶ ffor þer was herbe spice nor rote  
 To hym so lusty as was þe bordelhouse  
 Nor garden non so holsom and so sote  
 To his plesaunce nor non so delicius 2280  
 As þe presence of folkes lecherus  
 And euer gladde to speke of ribaudie  
 And folke to cherish þat couth flater and lie  
 ¶ Til at þe laste godde of verrey right  
 Displesid was with his condicions  
 Because he was in euery mannys sight  
 So feminine in his affeccions  
 And holy gaue his inclinacions  
 Duryng his lyfe to euery vicius þing  
 Terrible for to here and namelie of a kynge  
 ¶ But as Bochas liste to put in mynde 2290  
 Whan Arbachus a prince of grete renown  
 Sawe of þis kyng þe fleshlie lustes blynde  
 Made with þe peple of þat region  
 Agayn hym an ordinaunce  
 And to hym sent for his mysgouernaunce  
 Of high disdeigne a ful pleyn diffiaunce

¶ Badde hym beware and prowldie to hym tolde  
pat he hym caste his vicius lyfe to assaile  
And in all haste also þat he wolde  
Within a felde mete hym in bataile 2300  
Wherof astonyd his hert gan to fayle [end of quire 3]

[36r, col. a]

Where among women he sat and made gaudes  
No wyght aboute but flaterers and baudes  
¶ And vp he rose and gan hymselfe avaunce  
No stuffe with hym but surefetoures  
Toke þe felde withoute governaunce  
No men abought but fooles and riotoures  
Whos aduersarie callid Arbachus  
Made hym prowdelie þe felde to forsake 2310  
That lyke a Cowarde his castell ha hath take  
¶ And for his herte frowardlie gan fayle  
Not lyke a knyght but lyke a losengeoure  
[H]is riche perre · his roiall apperaile  
[H]is golde his luelles vesels and tresoure  
Was brought afforn hym down out of a toure  
In myddes of his pales and gaue his men in charge  
Of coole and faget to make a fyre full large ·  
¶ In which he caste his tresoure and Iewellis  
More bestiall þan I like a manlie man  
And in myddes of his riches · stones and vesels 2320  
And into þe fyre furiuslie he ranne  
This triumphe Sardanapal wanne  
With fyre consumyd for his finall mede  
Brent all to asshis amonge þe coles rede  
¶ Beforn his deth badde men shuld write  
Vpon his Grave ~~do~~ þe booke doth specifie  
With lettres large þis reson for to indite  
My cursid lyf my froward Tirannie  
Myn idlenesse myn hateful lecherie  
Haue causid me with many false desyre 2330  
In my laste dayes to be consumid with fyree  
¶ This Epitaphie on his Grave he set  
To shewe hough he was in all his lyve  
Besy euer to hyndre and to lette  
Al maner vertu and þeragayn to stryve  
Who followeth þe traces is neuer lyke to thryve  
ffor which ye princes seth for youre availe  
Vengeaunce euer foloweth vices at þe taylor

---

[122r, col. a64 – Book IX.2511-end of MS]

^*quomodo* daunte poeta apparuit Bocacio ·^

And in his studie wiþ ful heuy chere  
While Iohn Bochas abode still in his sete  
To hym apperid and approche nere  
Daunte of fflorence þe laureat poete  
Wiþ his dites and Retorikes swete  
Demure of loke fulfillid wiþ pacience

[122r, col. b]

With a visage notable of reuerence

¶ Whan Bochas sawe hym vpon his fete he stode

And to mete hym he toke his pase ful right

Wiþ grete reuerence availid cappe and hooðe 2520

And to hym saide wiþ humble chere and sight

O clerest sonne o verrey soþfaste light

Of oure cite which callid is florence

Laude vnto þe honour and reuerence

¶ Þu haste illumynd Itale and lumbardie

Wiþ laureat dites in þi flouryng dayes

Grounde and begynner of prudent policie

Among fflorentynes suffridest grete affrayes

As golde purid and preuid at all assayes

In trouþ madiste mekelie þiselfe stronge 2530

ffor comyn profit to suffre peynn and wronge

¶ O noble poete touchyng þis matiere

Hough fflorentynes were to þe vnkynde

I wyll remembre and write wiþ goode chere

Þi pitevus exile and put here in mynde

Nay *quod* Daunte but here stand oon behynde

Duke of Athens turne toward hym þi stile

His vncouþe storie brefelie to compile

¶ And yf þu liste to do me þis plesaunce

To descryve his knyghtlie excellence 2540

I wyll þu put his lyfe in remembrance

Hough he oppressid by myghty violence

Þis famus cite callid fflorence

Be which storie ful pleyndie þu shalt se

Which were frendes and fone to þe cite

¶ And which were able for to be excusid

Yf þe trouþe be clerlie perceyvid

And which were worþi for to be rehersid

Be whom þe cite full falslie was deceyvid

Of circumstances notablie conceyvid 2550

To rekyn in ordre vpon euery side

Which shuld be chasid and which shuld abide

¶ And whan Bochas knew all þe intencion  
 Of þe saide Daunte he caste hym anon right  
 To obey his maistre as it was reson  
 Toke his penne and as he caste his sight  
 A litle asyde he sawe no maner wyght  
 Save duke Galtere ~~brefelie to procede~~ of all þat longe day  
 ffor Daunte vnwarlie vanysshid was his way  
 ¶ Þis saide Galtere brefelie to procede 2560  
 Like as it is put in remembraunce  
 Touchyng his lyne and his roial kynred  
 He was descendid of þe brode of ffraunce  
 By longe processe and knyghtlie purviaunce  
 His fadre fyrste by diligent laboure  
 Of Athenes was lorde and *gouvernour*  
 ¶ Stode but a while in clere possession  
 Grekes to hym hadde ful grete envie  
 Caste of assent for to put hym down  
 And depryve hym of his famus duche 2570  
 To þer intent a leyser did espie  
 Toke hym at myschefe *and* quakyng in his [drede]  
 Of high despite in haste smot of his hed[e]  
 ¶ Vpon whos deþ avengyd for to be  
 Þe sayd Gaultere wiþ myghty apparail[e]  
 Caste he wolde asege þat cite  
 But of his purpose longe he did fayl[e]  
 And in þis while with many stran[ge bataile]  
 ij · myghty princes cam doun of pys[e]  
 Leyde a sege to luke in knyghtlie wy[se] 2580  
 ¶ fflorentynes to luke were fauorab[le]  
 And to delyuer þe sege fro þe toun  
 Wiþ multitude almost innumerable  
 Made ordinaunce and kny[ghtlie þei cam doun]  
 Which turnyd after to þeir d[estru]ccioun

**[122v, col. a]**

ffor it fell so of mortall aventure  
 On fflorentynes fell þe discomfiture  
 ¶ Þe noyse and fame of þis grete bataile  
 Gan sprede ferre by reporte of language  
 In lumbardie and þurgh all lumbardie 2590  
 Amonge soudeieours lusty of corage  
 And among oþer feynyng a pilgrimage  
 Þe said Gaultere by vnware violence  
 Cam fro Naplis doun into fflorence  
 ¶ Þe fflorentynes helde fyrst a parlement  
 ffor þe saluacion and garde of þe cite

By grete prudence and grete avisment  
 Of such as were highest of degre  
 By oonn assent þei gave þe souereignete  
 Þem to governe hoppyng to þeir increce 2600  
 Wip statutes made boþe for werre and pees  
 ¶ þe grete estates and rulers of þe townn  
 Callid magnates þoo dayes in soþnesse  
 To Gaulter gave þis dominacioun  
 Of intent þe comyns to oppresse  
 And merchauntes to spoile of þeir richesse  
 Streyn men of crafte by froward violence  
 Agayn þe libertes vsid in fflorence  
 ¶ þe peple allway in awayte liggyng  
 To be restorid vnto þeir liberte 2610  
 Gan gruge sore among þemselfe pleynyng  
 ffor grete extorcions donn to þeir cite  
 þe grete also of moste auctorite  
 Hadde lever to suffre Gaultere reigne  
 þan þeir exaccions to modifie or restreyne  
 ¶ þis saide Gaulter in ful subtile wyse  
 By a fals maner of simulacion  
 Envie in hert vnto þeir ffraunchise  
 All þat he wrought for shorte conclusion  
 Was don oonlie to þeir destruccion 2620  
 Wip a pretence feynynd of frendliede  
 To his promisse ay contrarie was þe dede  
 ¶ Clambe vp by processe to full hie estate  
 By feynynd speche and subtil flaterie  
 In his hert wex pompus and elate  
 His wyrkyng outwarde no man couþ espie  
 Litle or litle drough to his partie  
 þat to conclude shortelie for to sey  
 All fflorence hys lustes did obey  
 ¶ Gan subtyllie þe comyns for to plesse þe comynte 2630  
 ffor to accomplissh falslie his desyris  
 Made promisse to increce þeir libertes  
 To such as were froward of maners  
 Made an oþe to destrue þeir officers  
 But þei wolde of þeir fre volunte  
 Graunte vnto þem larger liberte  
 ¶ Gretter power and dominacion  
 To increce his myght vpon euery syde  
 Gan manace þe grettest of þe townn  
 And day be day increce in his pride 2640  
 ffelly began and felly did abide  
 Þervpon kepte close in þeir entraile

þe fflorentynes gretelie gan mervaille  
 ¶ In þis while was þer oon Reynere  
 Of grete auctorite and of grete reuerence  
 [A m]yghty *seruaunt* and a grete officere  
 [To] whos byddyng obeyed all fflorence  
 [Wh]ich wiþ Gaulter acordid in sentence  
 [Wiþ] soudeieours hadd stuffid iche hostrie  
 ffor to susten of Gauter þe partie 2650  
 ¶ [And] traytourslie for to fortiefie  
 [þe i]ntent of Gaulter fell and ambicius  
 To haue þe estate onlie by tirannie  
 [As þeir] chefe lorde froward *and* surquedus  
 To [reigne] in fflorence þe case was *perilus*  
 Whan .ij. [tiran]nes ben boþ of on assent  
 Wiþ [multitude to] accomplish þeir intent

**[122v, col. b]**

¶ Which þing considrid by þeir governours  
 And magnates callid in þe Cite 2660  
 Whan þat þei founde among[e þem no] soco[urs]  
 To remedie þeir grete aduer[site]  
 ffell to acorde of necessite  
 Gave þeir assent wiþoute [variaunce]  
 þat Gaultere shuld haue all þe gov[ern]aunce  
 ¶ And condescendid þei were t[o] þis [i]ssue  
 þat Gaulter shuld in all his best wyse  
 Vpon þe bodi be sworn of *criste ihesu* 2667  
 Vsid of olde and for no covetyse 2669  
 ffrom þeir *promisse* for lyfe nor deþ decly[ne] 2670  
 As by conuencion liste to determyne  
 ¶ Hervpon was blown a trumpet  
 ffor to assemble þe estates of þe town  
 A parlement holde Gaulter fyrst was set  
 And to pronounce þe conuencion  
 Wiþ euery parcell entitled by reson  
 Like þeir acorde declaryng anon right  
 Stode vp a vocate in þe peples sight  
 ¶ Wiþ men of armes in stele armyd bright 2680  
 Vnto þeir pales chefe and principall  
 þe seyde Gaulter conveid anon right  
 Set in a sete most statelie and roiall  
 And þe peple wiþ voice memoriall  
 Gan crie lowde concludyng þis sentence  
 Gaulter for euer was chefe lorde of fflorence  
 ¶ So to *persever* duryng all his lyfe  
 Toke in þe pales ful possessioun



þer durste non agayn hym make no stryfe  
 Grauntid to hym þe *dominacioun*  
 Of all þe Castellis aboute enviroun 2690  
 Tuscane and Arech and Castell fflorentyne  
 Wip all lordeshippes to mount appenyne ·  
 ¶ As ye haue herd Gaulter þus began  
 By his own furius diuinaile  
 Seyd he was born to be lorde of Tuscane  
 Wip a grete partie also of Itaile  
 Tolde he was lorde conveide by a quaile  
 Sayd ouermore were it right or wrong  
 þat was þe sentence of þe byrdes ~~son~~ songe  
 ¶ þe same byrde brought hym fyrste to fflorence 2700  
 All þe wey afforn hym tok his flight  
 Wip swet syngyng did hym reuerence  
 High in þe eire of corage ~~and~~ gladde ~~and~~ light  
 Wolde neuer parte oute of his sight  
 Gave hym tokyns to sette his hert afyre  
 þat of fflorence he shulde be lorde ~~and~~ syre  
 ¶ þe same byrde he bare in his devysys  
 ffull richelie enbroudid wyth perre  
 Toke vpon hym many grete emprisis  
 As chefe lorde of fflorence þe cite 2710  
 Sat in iugement and governyd þe cuntre  
 Drough to hym fflaterers ~~and~~ folke þat coup lie  
 Baudes and rebaudes where he myght þem spie  
 ¶ Of þat cite tok mervelus truages  
 Incrochyd to hym richesse of þe town  
 Of lecherie vsyd grete outragis  
 Of maydyns wyvys made non excepcion  
 Voide of mercy grace and remission  
 ffounde querels for to be vengeable  
 þat to reherce it is abhominable · 2720  
 ¶ Where he hatid *mercyles* he slep  
 Brake fraunchises and olde libertes  
 þe peple pleynyng desyryng sore his deþe  
 Cried vengeaunce aboute in þeir cites  
 ffor tirannie don in þeir cuntres  
 Which was cause of grete dissencion  
 And of þeir citi almost subuersion  
**[end of manuscript – four leaves (901 lines) missing]**

## TEXTUAL NOTES (by book and line number, collated with Bergen)

### Book I

- 176 Annotation at left margin (two dots with flourish on top); this mark is similar to those used elsewhere to indicate misordered lines, though nothing is out of order here
- 190-211 Right margin has several (early modern?) washed notes or pen trials, now illegible
- 247-248 Marginal note at left (partially lost due to trimming): [*?Not*]at I. *Lydgate famosos librorum*
- 255 For *of Retorik þe chefe welle*, Bergen prints *the cheeff welle off eloquence*
- 260-261 Marginal note at left (partially lost due to trimming): [*Fra*]ncisco petrarcha
- 274-275 Marginal note at left (partially lost due to trimming): [*Cha*]uncer
- 283 Marginal note at left (partially lost due to trimming): [*?De libr*]is Chauncer
- 295 For *this booke*, Bergen prints *thastlabre*
- 303 For *In englissh*, Bergen prints *Dante in Inglissh*
- 330-337 Line 331 is out of place, following line 336 (per Bergen); a bracket in the inner margin (red ink over brown, so seemingly scribal), indicates the proper position of the line
- 362 Faint letters (illegible) above this line, in top margin; perhaps dry-point or very faded brown-ink pen trail or letter practice
- 428-435 Annotation in right margin (partially lost due to trimming): *Hic habuit iste ... Lidgate in mandatis a ... ad transferendum librum ... linguam Anglicanam*
- 469-470 Annotation in right margin (partially lost due to trimming), apparently a guide for the rubric: *Explicit prologus · Incipit ... Tragedia de Ad[am] ...*
- 470 Line begins with large blue initial *W* (three lines in height)
- 530 Line was originally omitted but is copied in the left margin (by scribe) near line 528; a signes-de-renvoi marks the correct insertion point
- 562-567 Line 563 is out of place here; annotations in the inner margin indicate the error: a small signum (three dots with flourish at bottom) marks line 563 (at its current location, after 566) and the place where it should be (between 562 and 564)
- 563 For *no name*, Bergen prints *the name*
- 673 Light brown (scribal) slash mark indicates separation of *were* and *þei*, which are otherwise written continuously
- 782-791 Light brown-ink line in left margin (faded) highlights these lines
- 820-826 Line 821 is out of place, set after 825 (per Bergen); a bracket in the inner margin (red ink over brown, so seemingly scribal) indicates the proper position of the line
- 823 For *erthlie*, Begen prints *hertili*
- 833-834 Faint brown-ink bracket in the right margin (faded with mold damage) connects these lines
- 905-909 Line 906 is out of place, set after 908 (per Bergen); a bracket in the outer margin (red ink over brown, so seemingly scribal) indicates the proper position of the line

- 982 Otiose stroke above the *u* in *sycurnes*, similar to standard *-er* abbreviation
- 1001-1002 Cropped note in outer margin: *[Tra]gedia 2<sup>a</sup> de Nembroth*, perhaps a guide for the rubric
- 1002 Line begins with large blue initial *M* (three lines in height)
- 1133 Strikethrough in red ink
- 1043 Lines 1044-1071 (per Bergen) not present in MS
- 1092 Lines 1093-1106 (per Bergen) not present in MS
- 1152-1154 Line 1153 (per Bergen) not present in MS, resulting in short stanza
- 1165 Slash between *selfe* and *moste* is scribal
- 1475 The name *Vixoses* is repeated in brown ink in outer margin
- 1484 In Bergen this line reads: *That the glory and the hih renoun*, and the next stanza (at line 1485) begins with *Ascryued were onto hys worthynesse*
- 1488-89 These lines in Bergen read: *Turne sholde to comoun auantage / Off al his peeple that euery maner age*
- 1492 The name *Thanaus* repeated in brown ink in outer margin
- 1506 The name *Zorastes* repeated in brown ink in outer margin
- 1510 Strikethrough in red ink
- 1515 The name *Ninus* repeated in brown ink in outer margin
- 1534 Strikethrough in red ink; *gan myghtyli p(re)uaile* written again in outer margin
- 1576 Strikethrough in red; *Pharao* written in brown ink in outer margin
- 1636 Bergen supplies *Semalioun*, but the name of kingdom is not present in this MS
- 1705 Bergen prints *Mercury* instead of *Thourye*
- 1754 First strikethrough in red ink; corrected word *indigence* repeated in brown ink in outer margin
- 1754-1756 Line 1755 (per Bergen) is not present in MS, resulting in short stanza
- 1808-1809 Nota bene mark and French notation *Lenvoie p(our) le femme* in outer margin, in hand different from main scribe's
- 1845 The name *Iubiter* appears in the outer left margin
- 1888-1930 Many lines are altered, repeated, or out of order here, such that the sense of the text and prosody is affected; consecutive labelling of line numbers through this section clarifies positions in MS as compared to Bergen
- 1893-1894 Lines 1893 and 1894 are reversed; a brown-ink bracket in the inner margin indicates the error
- 1893 For *humble of his toke* Bergen prints *Humble off his cheere took*
- 1902-1905 Line 1902 is out of place; a bracket in the inner margin (a red-ink line over a brown-ink line) indicates its proper position
- 1907-1918 These lines not present in MS, though part of line 1914 (*And in the temple of Delphos stille a-bod*, per Bergen) seems to be maintained
- 1923 The word *bulle* is written in the outer right margin, apparently in the hand of the main scribe
- 2011 For *hoole the regallie* Bergen prints *the regalie*
- 2018 For *his place* Bergen prints *hir paleis*
- 2045-2107 Lines 2045-2072 (4 stanzas) and lines 2073-2107 (5 stanzas) are reversed, so that the story of Athamas who thought his wife was a lion comes before the stanzas lamenting Cadmus' ill fortune
- 2073 For *Cadmus sorowes* Bergen prints *his sorwes*

- 2086 The word *lones* should be *leones* or *liones*
- 2090 For *hent* Bergen prints *rente*
- 2122-2149 Lines 2143-2149 (1 stanza) and 2122-2142 (3 stanzas) are reversed
- 2126 For *inguraunce* (sic), Bergen prints *enqueraunce*
- 2201 For *sought* Bergen prints *slouh*
- 2214 The word *solued* appears to be an error for *folued* (compare Bergen's *folwid*)
- 2249 The word *humeus* should be *humurs* or *humours* (per Bergen)
- 2261 For *alleuate* (from *elevaten*?) Bergen prints *alterat*
- 2339-2352 This stanza collapses two stanzas (per Bergen), so that rhyme scheme and sense are affected; lines 2340-2345 and line 2350 are omitted in MS
- 2347 Pen trials in MS just under this line (bottom right margin of fol. 9v)
- 2349 *Lut* is an error for *Cut* (per Bergen); for *were ware or se* Bergen prints only *wer war* (i.e., *or se* is an addition) – three dots (∴) next to this line seem to indicate awareness of the errors
- 2363 For *fame* Bergen prints *shame*
- 2377-2387 Washed washed notes or pen trials (early modern) at outer margin here, now illegible
- 2381 For *fere* Bergen prints *dreed*
- 2388/2395 Scribe combines lines 2388 and 2395 (*Touchyng the eende off ther furious discord* and *Sauff whan she hadde fulfillid hir purpos*, per Bergen) and omits lines 2389-2394
- 2397 For *Reuokyd* Bergen prints *Resorted*
- 2398 For *His* Bergen prints *Hir*
- 2402 For *This* Bergen prints *Thus*
- 2405 Ink blot over capital *S* in *Sithen*, perhaps a correction
- 2409 Large blue capital *T* (three lines tall) at start of line
- 2411 For *Bochas* Bergen prints *Ouide*
- 2430 For *ligge* Bergen prints *liuen*
- 2448 For *fest* Bergen prints *felt*
- 2491 For *in parti* Bergen prints *in iupartie*
- 2528 Two slash marks in the outer margin here, similar to those that often act as guides for rubricated paraph marks
- 2533 For *and glorie* Bergen prints *off glory*
- 2537 For *priuelie* Bergen prints *secrelie*
- 2540 For *hym* Bergen prints *it*
- 2559 For *ffor to gete me* Bergen prints *Forgete my*
- 2585 The word *me* omitted in Bergen
- 2589 The word *I* omitted in Bergen
- 2590 For *yeue me youre* Bergen prints *youe to you myn*
- 2591 For *ought not* Bergen prints *auhte inouh*
- 2596 For *so sore* Bergen prints *to sore*
- 2601 For *astodied* Bergen prints *astonyd*
- 2606 Bergen prints *look* (as the word should be), but there is an extra *o* in MS
- 2627 Scribe likely missed the second *r* in *contraius*; Bergen prints *contrarious*
- 2615-2616 Bergen's lines are different here: *For euery-wher, wher ye do returne, / And eueri place wher-as ye sojourne*

- 2620 For *actez ben* Bergen prints *accus is*
- 2623 For *vengeable* Bergen prints *disnaturel*
- 2630-2631 For *þe* (before both *dominacion* and *regallie*) Bergen prints *ther*
- 2667 For *outhlie* (here and elsewhere in this section) Bergen prints *ouglie*
- 2677 For *poetis* Bergen prints *the poete*
- 2692 For *þerin in partie* Bergen prints *ther in iupartie*
- 2693 Strikethrough correction in red ink
- 2705 For *liknes* Bergen prints *liklynese*
- 2709 For *truste in them ar sonyst* Bergen prints *assure hem rathest been*
- 2723 Paraph mark is misplaced here (should be at line 2724)
- 2724 For *rigure* Bergen prints *rigerous*
- 2725 For *sorow* Bergen prints *sort*
- 2726 For *to oon* Bergen prints *on*
- 2729 For *soioured* (clearly an error) Bergen prints *socoured*
- 2734 For *Somtyme* Bergen prints *Whilom*
- 2737 Strikethrough correction in red ink
- 2739 For *euerychon oute of thrall* Bergen prints *in especiall*
- 2760 Double *and* is a scribal error
- 2772 For *ix sterres* Bergen prints *the sterres*
- 2780 For *yow* Bergen prints *now*
- 2794 The word *eke* omitted in Bergen
- 2796 For *he loste* Bergen has *he so loste*; the word *doughtris* in this line is written *dris*, apparently missing an abbreviation mark (?)
- 2801 For *charite* Bergen prints *cheer*
- 2804 For *þe booke* Bergen prints *my book*
- 2812 For *intent ful onclene* Bergen prints *entent Phedra ful oncleene*
- 2821-2843 Stanzas are out of order here: Bergen's lines 2829-2842 follow line 2821 in MS
- 2833 For *oonlie in his rage* Bergen prints *in his furious rage*
- 2836-2837 Red paraph mark and Latin notation (partially lost due to trimming) in outer margin: *Nota de mulieribus inuenientibus / falsas fabulas ad decipiendum mar[es]*
- 2826 The word *cam* is an error for *can*
- 2863 For *in fere* Bergen prints *Ifeere*
- 2869 For *weddid* (which does not make sense here) Bergen prints *was ded*
- 2782 For *here* Bergen prints *herte*
- 2884 For *language* Bergen prints *doomys*
- 2885 Blue capital *A* (three lines in height) begins line
- 2889 For *mansse* Bergen prints *manace*
- 2896 For *drie* Bergen prints *drad*
- 2899 For *for the werres* Bergen prints *with hookes made lyk sithes*
- 2903 Missing line written in the outer margin (partially lost due to trimming); a line (red-ink over brown ink) connects it to its correct position in the stanza
- 2929-2941 Lines are out of order in one stanza (2929-2933) and one stanza is omitted (2934-2940, per Bergen)
- 2963 For *And wyselie* Bergen prints *Auysili*
- 2986 For *his* Bergen prints *hir*

- 2989 For *longe to suffre* Bergen prints *suffre hem longe to*  
 2998 *Thurgh* should be *Thof* or *Though*  
 3003 End of the first quire: the bottom margin contains the signature *Wyllham Fermer* and the catchwords (bottom right) *ffor fortune*  
 3013 For *hir* Bergen prints *his*  
 3017 For *euer eny wodlie* Bergen prints *on any worldli*  
 3042 For *sendith his myght* Bergen prints *yeueth liht*  
 3050 For *CCCC* (four hundred) Bergen prints *thre hundrid*; the scribe correctly writes *CCC* in instances below this (see 3061 and 3072)  
 3053 For *thyng* Bergen prints *signe*  
 3065 For *in wys* Bergen prints *in no parti*  
 3069 For *ffor to* (surely an error) Bergen prints *Force*  
 3109 For *fresshe from* Bergen prints *is fresshest in*  
 3115 For *bemys* Bergen prints *stremys down*  
 3122-3158 Lines 3123-3157 (5 stanzas: the end of the envoy for Gideon and the fall of Jabin) do not appear in the MS  
 3163-64 A brown-ink rhyming brace brackets these lines on the right margin.  
 3168 *His* is a scribal error; Bergen prints (correctly) *Hir* instead of *His*.  
 3168-82 A brown-ink line in the left margin highlights these lines.  
 3246 Bergen prints *he* instead of *it*.  
 3255 Bergen prints *brestis* instead of *pappes*.  
 3282 The word *reffris* appears to be an error for *reffus* (per Bergen); lines 3283-3291 (per Bergen) are not present in the manuscript.  
 3295-97 Lines 3295 and 3297 are reversed (per Bergen), and a red-ink bracket on the inner margin, connected to reversed lines, seems to indicate awareness of the error.  
 3361 The doubled word (*not not*) is a scribal error.  
 3366-67 Two half-lines are reversed here. Bergen prints: *There was noon helpe nor other remedie, / Bi the statut but that he must deie*.  
 3368 *forll* is deleted by red-ink strikethrough and brown-ink subpunction; the correction is in the left outer margin.  
 3376 Cropped note in outer right margin: *Spinx volucris penna pede ser[pentis] / fronte puella*  
 3384 For *go or fle*, Bergen prints *go nor fle*.  
 3387 Note in outer right margin: ¶ *Problema Serpentis*.  
 3388 For *.ij.*, Bergen prints *four*.  
 3423 For *staffe impotent*, Bergen prints *staff or potent*.  
 3426 For *crokyd*, Bergen prints *crossid*.  
 3446 Bergen prints *dispence* instead of *expence*.  
 3487 A blot of brown ink before the word *conuenience* indicates that a (now unreadable) letter was deleted.  
 3523-27 Lines 3524 and 3526 are reversed (per Bergen); and a red-ink bracket (over an earlier brown-ink one) on the inner margin, connected to reversed lines, seems to indicate awareness of the error.  
 3558 The words *in partie* should read *in iupartie* (as in Bergen).  
 3577 For *article*, Bergen prints *oracle*.  
 3612 For *tale*, Bergen prints *rumor*.

- 3638 For *Corvid*, Bergen prints *croked*.
- 3679-87 Lines 3680-3686 (per Bergen) are not present in the manuscript, but the missing stanza seems to be the result of eyeskip: the first half of line 3680 is present (*Sent vnto Thebes*), but the line is completed by the second half of 3687 (*Thebes þe myghty town*); eyeskip is on the word *Thebes*, and affects the text's sense.
- 3705 The words *had be* are an error for *had he*.
- 3711 For *promisse*, Bergen prints *promesse*.
- 3720 For *And*, Bergen prints *Nor*.
- 3724 *Sege of Thebes* refers to Lydgate's earlier authored work (ca. 1420) of the same name.
- 3739 Deletion here is with both red-ink strikethrough and brown-ink subpunction; correction is interline.
- 3752 A *nota* mark is in the outer left margin at this line.
- 3773 For *oper syde*, Bergen prints *everi side*.
- 3776 For *fame*, Bergen prints *diffame*.
- 3780 Lines 3781-3787 (per Bergen) are not present in the manuscript.
- 3796 For *ever to lyve in peyne*, Bergen prints *ever endure peyne*.
- 3828 For *by example of scripture*, Bergen prints *bexauple & bi scripture*.
- 3829 Lines 3830-3836 (per Bergen) are not present in the manuscript.
- 3844 Large blue capital *B* (three lines in height) at start of this line
- 3849 For *began* Bergen prints *be*
- 3861 For *par dieu* Bergen prints *parde*
- 3863 For *to write* Bergen prints *tendite*
- 3864 For *to indite* Bergen prints *to write*
- 3871 For *more pitevous* Bergen prints *mor froward nor pitous*
- 3878 For *resembler* Bergen prints *rassemblith*
- 3890 For *Who* Bergen prints *Whos*
- 3893 For the second instance of *a* Bergen prints *his*
- 3903 For *duplicate* Bergen prints *duplicite*
- 3904 For *who* Bergen prints *how*
- 3913 For *þat am* Bergen prints *that I am*
- 3913 For *as* Bergen prints *a*
- 3921 For *Thus* Bergen prints *This*
- 3931 For *departid* Bergen prints *partid*
- 3933 For *imbesile* Bergen prints *exile*
- 3938 Bergen omits *his*
- 3944 For *Iniurius* Bergen prints *injuries*
- 3945 For *eyther forgete* Bergen prints *outher part forgete*
- 3949 For *Wher* Bergen prints *Wheroff*
- 3963 For *shadowyd* Bergen prints *shroudid*
- 3966 For *þe pore* Bergen prints *ther peur*
- 3970 For *This* Bergen prints *Thus*
- 3973 For *þe* Bergen prints *he*
- 3991 For *wylde* Bergen prints *wili*
- 4006 Bergen omits *þus*
- 4011 For *þe* Bergen prints *these*

- 4012 For *This* Bergen prints *Thus*  
 4013 For *coniectyng* Bergen prints *aduertyng*  
 4025 For *innocencie* Bergen prints *tirannye*  
 4033 For *confis* Bergen prints *cruses*  
 4037 For *This dar I sey for* Bergen prints *Yis I dar seyen for bi*  
 4044 For *erroure* Bergen prints *horroure*  
 4046 For *Shrowyd* Bergen prints *Shrowded*  
 4047 For *But alas* Bergen prints *But I allas*  
 4048 For *no oper* Bergen prints *nouther*  
 4050 For *þeir blood ek did I drynk* Bergen prints *& off ther blood dede drynke*  
 4051 For *to* Bergen prints *in*  
 4052 For *I not* Bergen prints *I may nat*  
 4057/4058 Scribe combines two lines here, copying the a-verse of line 4057 and the b-verse of 4058; this results in a short stanza  
 4060 For *wher* Bergen prints *wheroff*  
 4072 For *coverid* Bergen prints *conveied*  
 4086 For *all voyde* Bergen prints *abraid*  
 4100 For *rote of all my mortal* Bergen prints *roote & ground off al my*  
 4107 Bergen omits *as*  
 4115/4116 Scribe combines two lines here, copying the a-verse of line 4115 and the b-verse of 4116; this results in a short stanza  
 4119 For *Demyng* Bergen prints *Deemyng euer*  
 4141-4145 Lines are out of order here and several correcting annotations appear: deletion in line 4143 is by subpunction, and the word *he* is added both in the left margin and interline with a caret; a bracket-style line in the left margin (written in red ink over brown ink) then connects line 4142 (currently at the end of the stanza) to its correct position after line 4141  
 4147 For *agayn* Bergen prints *how ageyn*  
 4147-4148 Scribe copies these lines twice (result of eyeskip with *Of his* and *By his*) and deletes the second instance, where a brown-ink curved line is visible beneath a red-ink cross out  
 4154 For *falslie* Bergen prints *he*  
 4158 For *deyne* Bergen prints *ryue*  
 4160 For *Vn* (which likely should be *Vnto*) Bergen prints *On me*  
 4174 For *Whiez* (which makes little sense here) Bergen prints *Which*  
 4177 For *theis* Bergen prints *ther*  
 4187-4189 Line 4188 does not appear in MS, resulting in short stanza  
 4195-4200 Lines are out of order here; a line at the left of the stanza (red ink over brown ink) connects lines 4196-4197 to their correct position after 4195; a small tick mark next to 4196 (in brown) also visible  
 4198 For *This* Bergen prints *Thus*  
 4206 For *endid* Bergen prints *fyned*  
 4224 Deletion by strikethrough with red ink over brown ink  
 4231 For *vntrouth* Bergen prints *on trouth*; for *insure* Bergen prints *assure*  
 4233 For *ouersidnes* (?) Bergen prints *cursidnesse*  
 4234 For *to vnknyt* Bergen prints *so knet*



- 4558 Large blue capital *A* (three lines in height) at start of line; for *all þat* Bergen prints *Althouh*
- 4565 For *is moste* Bergen prints *that chaung is most*
- 4569 For *puissaunce* Bergen prints *hih puissaunce*
- 4598 For *so* Bergen prints *do*
- 4602 For *labour* Bergen prints *studie*
- 4612 For *and* Bergen prints *or*
- 4623 For *crokid* Bergen prints *crabbid*
- 4624-4626 Annotation in right outer margin (brown ink with red-ink paraph): ¶ *Nota de lingua / bona et mala / et de adulatoribus*
- 4628 For *well* Bergen prints *riht weel*
- 4634 For *Afȳr* Bergen prints *Lich*
- 4644 In Bergen this line reads: *Shet up his doomys betwixe lokkis tweyne*
- 4650 Bergen omits *And*
- 4660 For *actes* Bergen prints *accus*
- 4676 Bergen omits *þeir*
- 4678 For *his* Bergen prints *in his*
- 4684 For *shal* Bergen prints *ye shal*
- 4696 Bergen omits *wel*
- 4699 For *Kepte* Bergen prints *Kept hym*
- 4700 For *no wey haue* Bergen prints *nat haue it*
- 4722 For *lyfe* Bergen prints *lyne*
- 4730 Annotation in outer right margin: *notate mulieres*
- 4750-4751 Brown-ink X mark appears in right margin here
- 4752 For *repreve* Bergen prints *preue*
- 4761 For *contrarie* Bergen prints *so contrarie*
- 4763 For *chiche* (scribal error) Bergen prints *which*
- 4765 For *ffor* Bergen prints *Nor*
- 4780 For *seruauntes* Bergen prints *sergauntis*
- 4782 Bergen omits *may*
- 4783 For *portes* Bergen prints *porteris*
- 4785 For *agayn* Bergen prints *ageyn hem*
- 4795 For *with myrth* Bergen prints *meryly*
- 4799 For *wylfull* Bergen prints *woful*
- 4802 For *moste* Bergen prints *ay most*
- 4806 For *ay inforsyng* Bergen prints *afforcyng ay trouthe*
- 4817 For *þeir* Bergen prints *hir*
- 4821 For *and* Bergen prints *nor*
- 4828 For *foule* Bergen prints *fell*
- 4829 For *intendaunce* Bergen prints *entendement*
- 4834 For *youre* Bergen prints *ther*
- 4845 Large blue capital *W* (three lines in height) at start of line
- 4855 For *cam* Bergen prints *gan neihhe*
- 4860 For *oon* Bergen prints *Oene off*
- 4862 For *to torne* Bergen prints *to-forn*

- 4884 For *Squenchid* Bergen prints *Queynt*  
4885 For *þer* Bergen prints *thus*  
4891 For *nede* Bergen prints *mede*  
4894 For *myght in* Bergen prints *cauhte an*  
4903 For *amonge* Bergen prints *a-mong hem*  
4908 For *hymself* Bergen prints *hym folk*  
4913 For *glad faynn* Bergen prints *ful glad & fayn*  
4927 For *hir* Bergen prints *ther*  
4943 For *godde* Bergen prints *God wot*  
4954 For *dwere* Bergen prints *weer*  
4964 For *all* Bergen prints *a-geyn al*  
4866 For *outhlie* Bergen prints *ougli*  
4974 For *þus* Bergen prints *these*  
4981 For *þat* Bergen prints *that thei*  
4984 For *nat perteineth vnto* Bergen prints *apparteneth to no*  
4996 For *is* Bergen prints *which is*  
4997 For *with hir cursid hande* Bergen prints *maad hire with hir hond*  
5006 Annotation in outer right margin, partially lost to trimming: ¶ *Nota de tribus sororibus fat[alibus]*  
5007 For *yow* Bergen prints *Ioue*  
5009 For *must* Bergen prints *may nat*  
5024 For *alyve* Bergen prints *heer a-lyue*  
5028 For *outhlie* Bergen prints *ougli*  
5030-5037 Bust of a figure in profile sketched in right outer margin, very faint (possibly dry point, damaged by mold) – likely medieval, unclear whether male or female  
5037 For *hirsself* Bergen prints *hir liff*  
5043 For *somtyme* Bergen prints *whilom*  
5065 For *nobles* Bergen prints *noble*  
5069 For *age* Bergen prints *ago*  
5085 For *reforme* Bergen prints *reuerse*  
5113 For *Som* Bergen prints *Sum man*  
5115 For *preferres be to* Bergen prints *preferrid bi*  
5117 For *ffame hir* Bergen prints *Famys*  
5122 For *haue* Bergen prints *haue be*  
5141 For *Ciciline* Bergen prints *Stillene*  
5155 For *nature* Bergen prints *power*  
5160 For *This* Bergen prints *Thus*  
5188 For *hede* Bergen prints *good heede*  
5195 For *diffyse* Bergen prints *despise*  
5196 Extra paraph at the beginning of this line, though it is not the beginning of stanza  
5204 For *nobles* Bergen prints *his noblesse*  
5211 For *insentente* Bergen prints *sholde in sentement*  
5213 For *distres many maner* Bergen prints *discrece in ony manys*  
5219 For *yf* Bergen prints *yaff*  
5220 For *Geaunt* Bergen prints *tiraunt*  
5237 For *of* (both instances) Bergen prints *on*

- 5238 For *He laude pat increce* Bergen prints *The land tencrece*  
5243 For *mordir his gestes* Bergen prints *slayen straungers*  
5259 For *his* Bergen prints *this*  
5261-5264 Line 5262 out of place here (mistakenly copied at the end of the stanza); a line in the left margin (red ink over brown ink) connects it to its correct place after 5261  
5275 For *peysid* Bergen prints *reised*  
5296 For *ffaynn* (surely a scribal error) Bergen prints *Spaigne*  
5325 For *contagius* Bergen prints *outraious*  
5329 Line is repeated and appears both at bottom of fol. 20rb and top of fol. 20va  
5333 For *passyng* Bergen prints *goyng*  
5334 For *Oathus* Bergen prints *Cachus*, and the scribe here notes the error as well: in the left margin is a brown-ink annotation: *Cachus*  
5365 For *beforn* Bergen prints *be force*  
5367 Deletion is by both brown-ink subpunction and red-ink strikethrough  
5373 For *pray* Bergen prints *parti*; for *wente* Bergen prints *hente*  
5378 For *gardey* (missing a macron) Bergen prints *gardeyn*  
5384 For *Coruz* (copying error for *Thoruz*?) Bergen prints *Thoruh*  
5393 For *connyng* Bergen prints *ful cunnyng*  
5401 For *grete* Bergen prints *hih*  
5406 For *sometyme* Bergen prints *whilom was*  
5407 For *regioun* Bergen prints *hous*  
5409 For *thought* Bergen prints *thoruh*  
5414-5420 Scribe initially skipped two lines (5415-5416) but corrected the error: four lines are deleted (5417-5420) with a brown-ink cross out and a red-ink wavy line; missing lines are then added, and the deleted lines are copied again in the correct position  
5421-5424 Line 5422 out of place here, though there is no indication that the scribe realized the error  
5421 For *pe* Bergen prints *in the*  
5422 For *ferre* (*serre*?) Bergen prints *Lerne*  
5425 Bergen omits *did* and prints *to* for *so*  
5435 For *of* Bergen prints *or*  
5444 For *lenyth* Bergen prints *lesith*  
5450 Deletion is with red-ink strikethrough; for *sometyme* Bergen prints *whilom*  
5457-5461 Line 5458 is out of place here (copied at end of stanza, between 5460 and 5461); red-ink line in left margin connects it to correct placement after 5457  
5460 For *armys* Bergen prints *hornys*  
5465 For *outhlie* Bergen prints *ougli*  
5471 For the first instance of *his* Bergen prints *he*  
5500 For *toknewe* Bergen prints *tognew*  
5506-5509 Lines 5507 and 5508 are reversed here; red-ink and brown-ink lines in the left margin mark the problem  
5513 For *and* Bergen prints *in*  
5314 Bergen omits *all*  
5515 Deletion with red-ink strikethrough  
5526-5527 Strikethroughs in both brown ink and red ink

5539 For *myghty* Bergen prints *knyhtli*  
 5548 For *Yeve* Bergen prints *You*; for *youre* Bergen prints *thoruh prudent*  
 5551 For *oper* Bergen prints *off other*  
  
 6833 Large red capital *A* (three lines in height) at start of line  
 6844-6845 Faded bracket at right margin (in brownish-green ink) marks these two lines  
 6845 For *stronglie* Bergen prints *straungeli*  
 6854 For *wher* Bergen prints *whan*  
 6855 For *odible* Bergen prints *horrible*  
 6856 For *ffor he fell almoste* Bergen prints *For ire almost he fill*  
 6858 For *horrible* Bergen prints *odible*  
 6864 For the first instance of *presence* Bergen prints *face*  
 6870 For *it* Bergen prints *he*  
 6872 For *holo* Bergen prints *hool*  
 6877 For *compile* Bergen prints *compleyne*  
 6882 For *swownyng* Bergen prints *swouhe*  
 6889 For *Somtye* Bergen prints *Whilom*  
 6892 For *Wele and wanhope* Bergen prints *Welle off wanhope*  
 6896 For *somtye* Bergen prints *whilom*  
 6897 For *sours* Bergen prints *sorwes*  
 6897-6923 Line in brownish-green ink marks these lines at left outer margin  
 6915 For *maiste sum* Bergen prints *maist afftir sum*  
 6921 For *so* Bergen prints *nat so*  
 6925 For *outrence* Bergen prints *offence*  
 6927 For *pore* Bergen prints *pure*  
 6946 For *ferful* Bergen prints *sorweful*  
 6950 For *peis* Bergen prints *thilke*  
 6962 For *ladie* Bergen prints *lord*  
 6966 For *somtye* Bergen prints *whilom*  
 6981 For *it hide* Bergen prints *it nat hide*  
 6988 For *make* Bergen prints *marke*  
 6996 For *pe* Bergen prints *his*  
 7000 Erasure by subpunction and red-ink strikethrough; correction interline  
 7002 Bergen omits *at*  
 7022 For *and* Bergen prints *al in*  
 7025 For *hir* Bergen prints *his*  
 7029 For *toke* Bergen prints *stood*  
 7031 For *The swerde in hir right hand* Bergen prints *Withoute abood the sharpe suerd*  
 7035 For *hymselfe* Bergen prints *the silff*  
 7048 For *which* Bergen prints *such*  
 7050 For *small* Bergen prints *fynal*  
 7052 For *And agayn right hasty* Bergen prints *Ageyn al riht & hasty*  
 7068 For *perturbeth youre* Bergen prints *perturben the*

## **Book II**

- 127-61 These lines (5 stanzas) are out of place; they appear in this MS immediately after the final line of Book I (per Bergen) and before the marked (i.e., rubricated) beginning of Book II
- 130 For *ye* Bergen prints *he*
- 137 For *many a* Bergen prints *manyfold*
- 140 For *fall* Bergen prints *fate*
- 149 For *make intencion* Bergen prints *made mencioun*
- 157 For *inhaunce* Bergen prints *auaunce*
- 159 For *of sentence* Bergen prints *& sentence*
- 161-1 Start of Book II's prologue (per Bergen) begins after lines 127-161 in this MS; there is a line space between the *Incipit* rubric and line 1
- 1 Large blue capital *T* (four lines in height) at start of line
- 6 For *not* Bergen prints *inouh*
- 7-21 Line with a loop at the top (in dark, brownish-green ink) marks these lines at the inner margin
- 9 For *gladnes* Bergen prints *al gladnesse*
- 21 For *pat* Bergen prints *ther*
- 33 The word *deserue* is written above the word *discerne*, in a hand different from the main scribe's
- 42 For *eclipsid* Bergen prints *cliptik*
- 59 For *oper* Bergen prints *ther*
- 61 Three dots (∴) appear next to this line at the left margin, seemingly to mark the correction or awareness of errors in this (and this next?) line
- 62 For *gyftys* Bergen prints *giltes*
- 65 For *conseruith* Bergen prints *confermeth*
- 71 For *and oute crie* Bergen prints *an outcri*
- 76 For *hert and thought* Bergen prints *herte, will & thouht*
- 82 For *forme* Bergen prints *ferme*
- 83 For *Both peis* (surely an error) Bergen prints *By othris*
- 94 For *do bite* Bergen prints *kerue & bite*
- 95 First correction by subpunction (in brown ink), second by red-ink over brown-ink strikethrough (correct word is written with brown ink)
- 126 Book II prologue ends here in this MS's arrangement; remaining stanzas (lines 127-161) are placed earlier, at end of Book I
- 1898 Large blue capital (three lines in height) at start of line
- 1917 For *bus she* Bergen prints *this Siche*
- 1919 For *greteli* Bergen prints *greuousli*
- 1920-1922 Line 1921 (per Bergen) not present in MS, resulting in short stanza
- 1924-1925 Rhyming brace in light brown ink connects these lines (inner margin)
- 1928 For *vnstable* Bergen prints *onstaunchable*
- 1935 For *she* Bergen prints *sithe*
- 1942 For *Boldest* Bergen prints *Bauys*
- 1972 For *in* Bergen prints *hir*
- 1982 For *diuinacions* Bergen prints *dyuynours*

1998	Deletion with brown-ink subpunction and red-ink strikethrough
2019	For <i>lyue</i> Bergen prints <i>wyue</i>
2023	Deletion with brown-ink subpunction and red-ink strikethrough
2032	For <i>his</i> Bergen prints <i>hir</i>
2042	For <i>pei were no</i> Bergen prints <i>for he was nat</i>
2057	For <i>attemp or tame</i> Bergen prints <i>tattempten or tattame</i>
2059	For <i>raþer</i> Bergen prints <i>rather deie</i>
2061	For <i>cuntre</i> Bergen prints <i>centre</i>
2075	For <i>youre</i> Bergen prints <i>his</i>
2078	For <i>Wheþer</i> Bergen prints <i>Wher</i>
2100	For <i>þat þei</i> Bergen prints <i>nat be</i>
2108	For <i>nere</i> Bergen prints <i>mor</i>
2124	For <i>And</i> Bergen prints <i>Go</i>
2130	For <i>saile</i> Bergen prints <i>soile</i>
2139-2140	Rhyming brace in light brown ink on outer margin connects these two lines
2141-2142	Rhyming brace in light brown ink on outer margin connects these two lines
2148-2149	Rhyming brace in light brown ink on outer margin connects these two lines
2156-2170	Long bracket in light brown ink on outer margin marks these fourteen lines
2159	Bergen omits <i>full</i>
2162	For <i>Ones</i> Bergen prints <i>Amyse</i>
2171	Annotation in left outer margin (in brown ink): <i>Lenvoie</i>
2183	For <i>socreteli</i> Bergen prints <i>cleerli</i>
2192	For <i>beaute</i> Bergen prints <i>bounte</i>
2198	For <i>trouth</i> Bergen prints <i>vertu</i>
2199	Annotation in left outer margin (in brown ink with red paraph): ¶ <i>Alia lenvoie</i>
2221	For <i>gete in frendes</i> Bergen prints <i>gete frendes</i>
2233	Below rubricated title for Sardanapalus section, scribe leaves last three available lines of this column blank
2234	Large blue initial (three lines in height) at start of line
2239	For <i>outhlie</i> Bergen prints <i>ougli</i>
2242	For <i>disers</i> Bergen prints <i>Assiriens</i>
2265	For <i>goode</i> Bergen prints <i>gret</i>
2270	Bergen omits <i>al</i>
2273	For <i>syluer white</i> Bergen prints <i>siluer-briht</i>
2276	For <i>was</i> Bergen prints <i>nas</i>
2289	First two letters of <i>Terrible</i> show evidence of erasure by scraping (correct letters written over the scraped parchment)
2294	For <i>an ordinaunce</i> Bergen prints <i>a coniuracioun</i>
2301	End of the third quire: bottom right margin shows catchwords, slightly cropped at lower edge: <i>Wher among women</i>
2305	For <i>surefetoures</i> Bergen prints <i>sergauntis riotous</i>
2307	For <i>abought but fooles and riotoures</i> Bergen prints <i>off armys but folkis vicious</i>
2320	For <i>in myddes of his riches</i> Bergen prints <i>myd his riche</i>
2321	Bergen omits <i>And</i>
2326	For <i>specifie</i> Bergen prints <i>certefie</i>
2328	For <i>Tirannie</i> Bergen prints <i>glotenye</i>

- 2331 Bergen omits *In*
- 2336 For *þe* traces Bergen prints *his tras*
- 2338 For *euer* Bergen prints *ay*

**Book IX**

- 2509-2510 Rubricated title for this section is inserted at inner margin (alongside end of previous section)
- 2511 Line begins with blue capital *A* (three lines in height)
- 2522 For *o verrey soþfaste liht* Bergen prints *daysterre and souereyn liht* (though he notes several other manuscripts that show the variant)
- 2548 For *rehersid* Bergen prints *refusid*
- 2563 For *brode* Bergen prints *blood*
- 2578 For *strange* Bergen prints *gret*
- 2590 For *þurgh* all lumbardie Bergen prints *thoruhout al Itaile*
- 2630 Strikethrough in red ink over brown ink
- 2636 For *þem* Bergen prints *hym*
- 2642 For *þerypon* Bergen prints *Wherupon*
- 2667-2669 Line 2668 (per Bergen) not present in MS, creating a short stanza here
- 2697 For *lorde* Bergen prints *lad*
- 2723 The word *sore* is repeated (in lighter brown ink) in the outer margin